

*Library
of
The Secretary to the President
of India*



सत्यमेव जयते

Reference No.
320

Ari N P

*Rashtrapati Bhavan,
New Delhi.*

**PRESIDENT'S
SECRETARIAT
LIBRARY**

1

POLITICS

1

ARISTOTLE'S POLITICS

Translated by
BENJAMIN JOWETT



CARLTON HOUSE • NEW YORK

MANUFACTURED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

CONTENTS

BOOK I

CHAPTER

Chapters 1, 2. Definition and structure of the State.

1. The state is the highest form of community and aims at the highest good. How it differs from other communities will appear if we examine the parts of which it is composed.
2. It consists of villages which consist of households. The household is founded upon the two relations of male and female, of master and slave; it exists to satisfy man's daily needs. The village, a wider community, satisfies a wider range of needs. The state aims at satisfying all the needs of men. Men form states to secure a bare subsistence; but the ultimate object of the state is the good life. The naturalness of the state is proved by the faculty of speech in man. In the order of Nature the state precedes the household and the individual. It is founded on a natural impulse, that towards political association.

Chapters 3-13. Household economy. The Slave. Property. Children and Wives.

3. Let us discuss the household, since the state is composed of households.

CHAPTER

4. First as to slavery. The slave is a piece of property which is animate, and useful for action rather than for production.
5. Slavery is natural; in every department of the natural universe we find the relation of ruler and subject. There are human beings who, without possessing reason, understand it. These are natural slaves.
6. But we find persons in slavery who are not natural slaves. Hence slavery itself is condemned by some; but they are wrong. The natural slave benefits by subjection to a master.
7. The art of ruling slaves differs from that of ruling free men but calls for no detailed description; any one who is a natural master can acquire it for himself.
8. As to property and the modes of acquiring it. This subject concerns us in so far as property is an indispensable substratum to the household.
9. But we do not need that form of finance which accumulates wealth for its own sake. This is unnatural finance. It has been made possible by the invention of coined money. It accumulates money by means of exchange. Natural and unnatural finance are often treated as though they were the same, but differ in their aims;
10. Also in their subject-matter; for natural finance is only concerned with the fruits of the earth and animals.
11. Natural finance is necessary to the householder; he must therefore know about live stock, agriculture, possibly about the exchange of the products of the earth, such as wood and minerals, for money. Special treatises on finance exist, and the subject should be specially studied by statesmen.
12. Lastly, we must discuss and distinguish the relations of husband to wife, of father to child.

CHAPTER

13. In household management persons call for more attention than things; free persons for more than slaves. Slaves are only capable of an inferior kind of virtue. Socrates was wrong in denying that there are several kinds of virtue. Still the slave must be trained in virtue. The education of the free man will be subsequently discussed.

BOOK II

Chapters 1-8. Ideal Commonwealths—Plato, Phaleas, Hippodamus.

1. To ascertain the nature of the ideal state we should start by examining both the best states of history and the best that theorists have imagined. Otherwise we might waste our time over problems which others have already solved.
Among theorists, Plato in the *Republic* raises the most fundamental questions. He desires to abolish private property and the family.
2. But the end which he has in view is wrong. He wishes to make all his citizens absolutely alike; but the differentiation of functions is a law of nature. There can be too much unity in a state.
3. And the means by which he would promote unity are wrong.
The abolition of property will produce, not remove, dissension.
Communism of wives and children will destroy natural affection.
4. Other objections can be raised; but this is the fatal one.
5. To descend to details. The advantages to be expected from communism of property would be better secured if private property were used in a liberal spirit to relieve

CHAPTER

the wants of others. Private property makes men happier, and enables them to cultivate such virtues as generosity. The *Republic* makes unity the result of uniformity among the citizens, which is not the case. The good sense of mankind has always been against Plato, and experiment would show that his idea is impracticable.

6. Plato sketched another ideal state in the *Laws*; it was meant to be more practicable than the other. In the *Laws* he abandoned communism, but otherwise upheld the leading ideas of the earlier treatise, except that he made the new state larger and too large. He forgot to discuss foreign relations, and to fix a limit of private property, and to restrict the increase of population, and to distinguish between ruler and subject. The form of government which he proposed was bad.
7. Phaleas of Chalcedon made equal distribution of property the main feature of his scheme. This would be difficult to effect, and would not meet the evils which Phaleas had in mind. Dissensions arise from deeper causes than inequality of wealth. His state would be weak against foreign foes. His reforms would anger the rich and not satisfy the poor.
8. Hippodamus, who was not a practical politician, aimed at symmetry. In his state there were to be three classes, three kinds of landed property, three sorts of laws. He also proposed to (1) create a Court of Appeal, (2) let juries qualify their verdicts, (3) reward those who made discoveries of public utility. His classes and his property system were badly devised. Qualified verdicts are impossible since jurymen may not confer together. The law about discoveries would encourage men to tamper with the Constitution. Now laws when obsolete and absurd should be changed; but needless changes diminish the respect for law.

CHAPTER

Chapters 9-12. The best existent states—Sparta, Crete, and Carthage—Greek lawgivers.

9. The Spartans cannot manage their serf population. Their women are too influential and too luxurious. Their property system has concentrated all wealth in a few hands. Hence the citizen body has decreased. There are points to criticize in the Ephorate, the Senate, the Kingship, the common meals, the Admiralty. The Spartan and his state are only fit for war. Yet even in war Sparta is hampered by the want of a financial system.
10. The Cretan cities resemble Sparta in their constitutions, but are more primitive. Their common meals are better managed. But the Cosmi are worse than the Ephors. The Cretan constitution is a narrow and factious oligarchy; the cities are saved from destruction only by their inaccessibility.
11. The Carthaginian polity is highly praised, and not without reason. It may be compared with the Spartan; it is an oligarchy with some democratic features. It lays stress upon wealth; in Carthage all offices are bought and sold. Also, one man may hold several offices together. These are bad features. But the discontent of the people is soothed by schemes of emigration.
12. Of lawgivers, Solon was the best; conservative when possible, and a moderate democrat. About Philolaus, Charondas, Phaleas, Draco, Pittacus, and Androdamas there is little to be said.

BOOK III

Chapters 1-5. The Citizen, civic virtue, and the civic body.

1. How are we to define a citizen? He is more than a mere denizen; private rights do not make a citizen. He is

CHAPTER

ordinarily one who possesses political power; who sits on juries and in the assembly. But it is hard to find a definition which applies to all so-called citizens. To define him as the son of citizen parents is futile.

2. Some say that his civic rights must have been justly acquired. But he is a citizen who has political power, however acquired.
3. Similarly the state is defined by reference to the distribution of political power; when the mode of distribution is changed a new state comes into existence.
4. The good citizen may not be a good man; the good citizen is one who does good service to his state, and this state may be bad in principle. In a constitutional state the good citizen knows both how to rule and how to obey. The good man is one who is fitted to rule. But the citizen in a constitutional state learns to rule by obeying orders. Therefore citizenship in such a state is a moral training.
5. Mechanics will not be citizens in the best state. Extreme democracies, and some oligarchies, neglect this rule. But circumstances oblige them to do this. They have no choice.

*Chapters 6-13. The Classification of Constitutions;
Democracy and Oligarchy; Kingship.*

6. The aims of the state are two: to satisfy man's social instinct, and to fit him for the good life. Political rule differs from that over slaves in aiming primarily at the good of those who are ruled.
7. Constitutions are bad or good according as the common welfare is, or is not, their aim. Of good Constitutions there are three: Monarchy, Aristocracy, and Polity.

CHAPTER

Of bad there are also three: Tyranny, Oligarchy, Extreme Democracy. The bad are perversions of the good.

8. Democracies and Oligarchies are not made by the numerical proportion of the rulers to the ruled. Democracy is the rule of the poor; oligarchy is that of the rich.
9. Democrats take Equality for their motto; oligarchs believe that political rights should be unequal and proportionate to wealth. But both sides miss the true object of the state, which is virtue. Those who do most to promote virtue deserve the greatest share of power.
10. On the same principle, Justice is not the will of the majority or of the wealthier, but that course of action which the moral aim of the state requires.
11. But are the Many or the Few likely to be the better rulers? It would be unreasonable to give the highest offices to the Many. But they have a faculty of criticism which fits them for deliberative and judicial power. The good critic need not be an expert; experts are sometimes bad judges. Moreover, the Many have a greater stake in the city than the Few. But the governing body, whether Few or Many, must be held in check by the laws.
12. On what principle should political power be distributed? Granted that equals deserve equal shares; who are these equals? Obviously those who are equally able to be of service to the state.
13. Hence there is something in the claims advanced by the wealthy, the free born, the noble, the highly gifted. But no one of these classes should be allowed to rule the rest. A state should consist of men who are equal, or nearly so, in wealth, in birth, in moral and intellectual excellence. The principle which underlies Ostracism is plausible. But in the ideal state, if a pre-eminent individual be found, he should be made a king.

CHAPTER

Chapters 14-18. The Forms of Monarchy.

14. Of Monarchy there are five kinds, (1) the Spartan, (2) the Barbarian, (3) the elective dictatorship, (4) the Heroic, (5) Absolute Kingship.
15. The last of these forms might appear the best polity to some; that is, if the king acts as the embodiment of law. For he will dispense from the law in the spirit of the law. But this power would be less abused if reserved for the Many. Monarchy arose to meet the needs of primitive society; it is now obsolete and on various grounds objectionable.
16. It tends to become hereditary; it subjects equals to the rule of an equal. The individual monarch may be misled by his passions, and no single man can attend to all the duties of government.
17. One case alone can be imagined in which Absolute Kingship would be just.
18. Let us consider the origin and nature of the best polity, now that we have agreed not to call Absolute Kingship the best.

BOOK IV (VI) *✓* *up to Chapter**Chapters 1-10. Variations of the main types of Constitutions.*

1. Political science should study (1) the ideal state, (2) those states which may be the best obtainable under special circumstances, and even (3) those which are essentially bad. For the statesman must sometimes make the best of a bad Constitution.
2. Of our six main types of state, Kingship and Aristocracy have been discussed (cf. Bk. III, c. 14 fol.). Let us begin by dealing with the other four and their divisions, inquiring also when and why they may be desirable.

CHAPTER

3. First as to Democracy and Oligarchy. The common view that Democracy and Oligarchy should be taken as the main types of Constitution is at variance with our own view and wrong. So is the view that the numerical proportion of rulers to ruled makes the difference between these two types; in a Democracy the Many are also the poor, in an Oligarchy the Few are also the wealthy. In every state the distinction between rich and poor is the most fundamental of class-divisions. Still Oligarchy and Democracy are important types; and their variations arise from differences in the character of the rich and the poor by whom they are ruled.
4. Of Democracies there are four kinds. The worst, extreme Democracy, is that in which all offices are open to all, and the will of the people overrides all law.
5. Of Oligarchies too there are four kinds; the worst is that in which offices are hereditary and the magistrates uncontrolled by law.
6. These variations arise under circumstances which may be briefly described.
7. Of Aristocracy in the strict sense there is but one form, that in which the best men alone are citizens.
8. Polity is a compromise between Democracy and Oligarchy, but inclines to the Democratic side. Many so-called Aristocracies are really Polities.
9. There are different ways of effecting the compromise which makes a Polity. The Laconian Constitution is an example of a successful compromise.
10. Tyranny is of three kinds: (1) the barbarian despotism, and (2) the elective dictatorship have already been discussed; in both there is rule according to law over willing subjects. But in (3) the strict form of tyranny, there is the lawless rule of one man over unwilling subjects.

CHAPTER

Chapters 11-13. Of the Best State both in general and under special circumstances.

11. For the average city-state the best constitution will be a mean between the rule of rich and poor; the middle-class will be supreme. No state will be well administered unless the middle-class holds sway. The middle-class is stronger in large than in small states. Hence in Greece it has rarely attained to power; especially as democracy and oligarchy were aided by the influence of the leading states.
12. No constitution can dispense with the support of the strongest class in the state. Hence Democracy and Oligarchy are the only constitutions possible in some states. But in these cases the legislator should conciliate the middle-class.
13. Whatever form of constitution be adopted there are expedients to be noted which may help in preserving it.

Chapters 14-16. How to proceed in framing a Constitution.

14. The legislator must pay attention to three subjects in particular: (a) The Deliberative Assembly which is different in each form of constitution.
15. (b) The Executive. Here he must know what offices are indispensable and which of them may be conveniently combined in the person of one magistrate; also whether the same offices should be supreme in every state; also which of the twelve or more methods of making appointments should be adopted in each case.
16. (c) The Courts of Law. Here he must consider the kinds of law-courts, their spheres of action, their methods of procedure.

BOOK V (VIII)

CHAPTER

Chapters 1-4. Of Revolutions, and their causes in general.

1. Ordinary states are founded on erroneous ideas of justice, which lead to discontent and revolution. Of revolutions some are made to introduce a new Constitution, others to modify the old, others to put the working of the Constitution in new hands. Both Democracy and Oligarchy contain inherent flaws which lead to revolution, but Democracy is the more stable of the two types.
2. We may distinguish between the frame of mind which fosters revolution, the objects for which it is started, and the provocative causes.
3. The latter deserve a more detailed account.
4. Trifles may be the occasion but are never the true cause of a sedition. One common cause is the aggrandizement of a particular class; another is a feud between rich and poor when they are evenly balanced and there is no middle-class to mediate. As to the manner of effecting a revolution: it may be carried through by force or fraud.

Chapters 5-12. Revolutions in particular States, and how revolutions may be avoided.

5. (a) In Democracies revolutions may arise from a persecution of the rich; or when a demagogue becomes a general, or when politicians compete for the favour of the mob.
6. (b) In Oligarchies the people may rebel against oppression; ambitious oligarchs may conspire, or appeal to the people, or set up a tyrant. Oligarchies are seldom destroyed except by the feuds of their own members; unless they employ a mercenary captain, who may become a tyrant.

CHAPTER

7. (c) In Aristocracies and Polities the injustice of the ruling class may lead to revolution, but less often in Polities. Aristocracies may also be ruined by an unprivileged class, or an ambitious man of talent. Aristocracies tend to become oligarchies. Also they are liable to gradual dissolution; which is true of Polities as well.
8. The best precautions against sedition are these: to avoid illegality and frauds upon the unprivileged; to maintain good feeling between rulers and ruled; to watch destructive agencies; to alter property qualifications from time to time; to let no individual or class become too powerful; not to let magistracies be a source of gain; to beware of class-oppression.
9. In all magistrates we should require loyalty, ability, and justice; we should not carry the principle of the constitution to extremes; we should educate the citizens in the spirit of a constitution.
10. (d) The causes which destroy and the means which preserve a Monarchy must be considered separately. Let us first distinguish between Tyranny and Kingship. Tyranny combines the vices of Democracy and Oligarchy. Kingship is exposed to the same defects as Aristocracy. But both these kinds of Monarchy are especially endangered by the insolence of their representatives and by the fear or contempt which they inspire in others. Tyranny is weak against both external and domestic foes; Kingship is strong against invasion, weak against sedition.
11. Moderation is the best preservative of Kingship. Tyranny may rely on the traditional expedients of demoralizing and dividing its subjects, or it may imitate Kingship by showing moderation in expenditure, and courtesy and temperance in social relations, by the wise use of ministers, by holding the balance evenly between the rich and poor.

CHAPTER

12. But the Tyrannies of the past have been short-lived. Plato's discussion of revolutions in the *Republic* is inadequate; e. g. he does not explain the results of a revolution against a tyranny, and could not do so on his theory; nor is he correct about the cause of revolution in an Oligarchy; nor does he distinguish between the different varieties of Oligarchy and Democracy.

BOOK VI (VII)

Chapters 1-8. Concerning the proper organization of Democracies and Oligarchies.

1. (A) Democracies differ *inter se* (1) according to the character of the citizen body, (2) according to the mode in which the characteristic features of democracy are combined.
2. Liberty is the first principle of democracy. The results of liberty are that the numerical majority is supreme, and that each man lives as he likes. From these characteristics we may easily infer the other features of democracy.
3. In oligarchies it is not the numerical majority, but the wealthier men, who are supreme. Both these principles are unjust if the supreme authority is to be absolute and above the law. Both numbers and wealth should have their share of influence. But it is hard to find the true principles of political justice, and harder still to make men act upon them.
4. Democracy has four species (cf. Bk. IV, c. 4). The best is (1) an Agricultural Democracy, in which the magistrates are elected by, and responsible to, the citizen body, while each office has a property qualification proportionate to its importance. These democracies should encourage agriculture by legislation. The next best

CHAPTER

- is (2) the Pastoral Democracy. Next comes (3) the Commercial Democracy. Worst of all is (4) the Extreme Democracy with manhood suffrage.
5. It is harder to preserve than to found a Democracy. To preserve it we must prevent the poor from plundering the rich; we must not exhaust the public revenues by giving pay for the performance of public duties; we must prevent the growth of a pauper class.
 6. (B) The modes of founding Oligarchies call for little explanation. Careful organization is the best way of preserving these governments.
 7. Much depends on the military arrangements; oligarchs must not make their subjects too powerful an element in the army. Admission to the governing body should be granted on easy conditions. Office should be made a burden, not a source of profit.
 8. Both in oligarchies and democracies the right arrangement of offices is important. Some kinds of office are necessary in every state; others are peculiar to special types of state.

BOOK VII (IV) ✓

Chapters 1-3. The Summum Bonum for individuals and states.

1. Before constructing the ideal state we must know what is the most desirable life for states and individuals. True happiness flows from the possession of wisdom and virtue, and not from the possession of external goods. But a virtuous life must be equipped with external goods as instruments. These laws hold good of both states and individuals.
2. But does the highest virtue consist in contemplation or in action? The states of the past have lived for action in

CHAPTER

the shape of war and conquest. But war cannot be regarded as a reasonable object for a state.

3. A virtuous life implies activity, but activity may be speculative as well as practical. Those are wrong who regard the life of a practical politician as degrading. But again they are wrong who treat political power as the highest good.

Chapters 4-12. A picture of the Ideal State.

4. We must begin by considering the population and the territory. The former should be as small as we can make it without sacrificing independence and the capacity for a moral life. The smaller the population the more manageable it will be.
5. The territory must be large enough to supply the citizens with the means of living liberally and temperately, with an abundance of leisure. The city should be in a central position.
6. Communication with the sea is desirable for economic and military reasons; but the moral effects of sea-trade are bad. If the state has a marine, the port town should be at some distance from the city.
7. The character of the citizens should be a mean between that of Asiatics and that of the northern races; intelligence and high spirit should be harmoniously blended as they are in some Greek races.
8. We must distinguish the members of the state from those who are necessary as its servants, but no part of it. There must be men who are able to provide food, to practise the arts, to bear arms, to carry on the work of exchange, to supervise the state religion, to exercise political and judicial functions.
9. But of these classes we should exclude from the citizen body (1) the mechanics, (2) the traders, (3) the

CHAPTER

husbandmen. Warriors, rulers, priests remain as eligible for citizenship. The same persons should exercise these three professions, but at different periods of life. Ownership of land should be confined to them.

10. Such a distinction between a ruling and a subject class, based on a difference of occupation, is nothing new. It still exists in Egypt, and the custom of common meals in Crete and Italy proves that it formerly existed there. Most of the valuable rules of politics have been discovered over and over again in the course of history. In dealing with the land of the state we must distinguish between public demesnes and private estates. Both kinds of land should be tilled by slaves or barbarians of a servile disposition.
11. The site of the city should be chosen with regard (1) to public health, (2) to political convenience, (3) to strategic requirements. The ground-plan of the city should be regular enough for beauty, not so regular as to make defensive warfare difficult. Walls are a practical necessity.
12. It is well that the arrangement of the buildings in the city should be carefully thought out.

Chapters 13-17. The Educational System of the Ideal State, its aim, and early stages.

13. The nature and character of the citizens must be determined with reference to the kind of happiness which we desire them to pursue. Happiness was defined in the *Ethics* as the perfect exercise of virtue, the latter term being understood not in the conditional, but in the absolute sense. Now a man acquires virtue of this kind by the help of nature, habit, and reason. Habit and reason are the fruits of education, which must therefore be discussed.

CHAPTER

14. The citizens should be educated to obey when young and to rule when they are older. Rule is their ultimate and highest function. Since the good ruler is the same as the good man, our education must be so framed as to produce the good man. It should develop all man's powers and fit him for all the activities of life; but the highest powers and the highest activities must be the supreme care of education. An education which is purely military, like the Laconian, neglects this principle.
15. The virtues of peace (intellectual culture, temperance, justice) are the most necessary for states and individuals; war is nothing but a means towards securing peace. But education must follow the natural order of human development, beginning with the body, dealing next with the appetites, and training the intellect last of all.
16. To produce a healthy physique the legislator must fix the age of marriage, regulate the physical condition of the parents, provide for the exposure of infants, and settle the duration of marriage.
17. He must also prescribe a physical training for infants and young children. For their moral education the very young should be committed to overseers; these should select the tales which they are told, their associates, the pictures, plays, and statues which they see. From five to seven years of age should be the period of preparation for intellectual training.

BOOK VIII (V). ✓

Chapters 1-7. The Ideal Education continued. Its Music and Gymnastic.

1. Education should be under state-control and the same for all the citizens.

CHAPTER

2. It should comprise those useful studies which every one must master, but none which degrade the mind or body.
3. Reading, writing, and drawing have always been taught on the score of their utility; gymnastic as producing valour. Music is taught as a recreation, but it serves a higher purpose. The noble employment of leisure is the highest aim which a man can pursue; and music is valuable for this purpose. The same may be said of drawing, and other subjects of education have the same kind of value.
4. Gymnastic is the first stage of education; but we must not develop the valour and physique of our children at the expense of the mind, as they do in Sparta. Until puberty, and for three years after, bodily exercise should be light.
5. Music, if it were a mere amusement, should not be taught to children; they would do better by listening to professionals. But music is a moral discipline and a rational enjoyment.
6. By learning music children become better critics and are given a suitable occupation. When of riper age they should abandon music; professional skill is not for them; nor should they be taught difficult instruments.
7. The various musical harmonies should be used for different purposes. Some inspire virtue, others valour, others enthusiasm. The ethical harmonies are those which children should learn. The others may be left to professionals. The Dorian harmony is the best for education. The Phrygian is bad; but the Lydian may be beneficial to children.

Cetera desunt.

Politics

Translated by Benjamin Jowett

POLITICS

BOOK I

1 Every state is a community of some kind, and every 1252^a community is established with a view to some good; for mankind always act in order to obtain that which they think good. But, if all communities aim at some good, the state or political community, which is the highest of all, and which embraces all the rest, aims at good in a greater degree than any other, and at the highest good.

Some people think ¹ that the qualifications of a statesman, king, householder, and master are the same, and that they differ, not in kind, but only in the number of their subjects. For example, the ruler over a few is called 10 a master; over more, the manager of a household; over a still larger number, a statesman or king, as if there were no difference between a great household and a small state. The distinction which is made between the king and the statesman is as follows. When the government is personal, the ruler is a king; when, according to the 15 rules of the political science, the citizens rule and are ruled in turn, then he is called a statesman.

But all this is a mistake; for governments differ in kind, as will be evident to any one who considers the matter according to the method ² which has hitherto guided us. As in other departments of science, so in politics, the 20

¹ Cp. Plato, *Politicus*, 258 E—259 D.

² Cp. 1256^a2.

compound should always be resolved into the simple elements or least parts of the whole. We must therefore look at the elements of which the state is composed, in order that we may see in what the different kinds of rule differ from one another, and whether any scientific result can be attained about each one of them.

2 He who thus considers things in their first growth
25 and origin, whether a state or anything else, will obtain the clearest view of them. In the first place there must be a union of those who cannot exist without each other; namely, of male and female, that the race may continue (and this is a union which is formed, not of deliberate purpose, but because, in common with other animals and
30 with plants, mankind have a natural desire to leave behind them an image of themselves), and of natural ruler and subject, that both may be preserved. For that which can foresee by the exercise of mind is by nature intended to be lord and master, and that which can with its body give effect to such foresight is a subject, and by nature a
1252^b slave; hence master and slave have the same interest. Now nature has distinguished between the female and the slave. For she is not niggardly, like the smith who fashions the Delphian knife for many uses; she makes each thing for a single use, and every instrument is best made when intended for one and not for many uses. But
5 among barbarians no distinction is made between women and slaves, because there is no natural ruler among them: they are a community of slaves, male and female. Wherefore the poets say—

‘It is meet that Hellenes should rule over barbarians’;
as if they thought that the barbarian and the slave were by nature one.

Out of these two relationships between man and woman, master and slave, the first thing to arise is the family, and Hesiod is right when he says—

‘First house and wife and an ox for the plough’,

for the ox is the poor man’s slave. The family is the association established by nature for the supply of men’s everyday wants, and the members of it are called by Charondas ‘companions of the cupboard’, and by Epimenides the Cretan, ‘companions of the manger.’ But when several families are united, and the association aims at something more than the supply of daily needs, the first society to be formed is the village. And the most natural form of the village appears to be that of a colony from the family, composed of the children and grandchildren, who are said to be suckled ‘with the same milk’. And this is the reason why Hellenic states were originally governed by kings; because the Hellenes were under royal rule before they came together, as the barbarians still are. Every family is ruled by the eldest, and therefore in the colonies of the family the kingly form of government prevailed because they were of the same blood. As Homer says: ³

‘Each one gives law to his children and to his wives.’

For they lived dispersedly, as was the manner in ancient times. Wherefore men say that the Gods have a king, because they themselves either are or were in ancient times under the rule of a king. For they imagine, not only the forms of the Gods, but their ways of life to be like their own.

When several villages are united in a single complete

³ *Od.* ix. 114, quoted by Plato, *Laws*, iii. 680 B, and in *N. Eth.* x. 1180^a 28.

community, large enough to be nearly or quite self-sufficing, the state comes into existence, originating in the bare needs of life, and continuing in existence for the sake of a good life. And therefore, if the earlier forms of society are natural, so is the state, for it is the end of them, and the nature of a thing is its end. For what each thing is when fully developed, we call its nature, whether we are speaking of a man, a horse, or a family. Besides, the final cause and end of a thing is the best, and to be self-sufficing is the end and the best.

Hence it is evident that the state is a creation of nature, and that man is by nature a political animal. And he who by nature and not by mere accident is without a state, is either a bad man or above humanity; he is like the

‘Tribeless, lawless, hearthless one,’

whom Homer⁴ denounces—the natural outcast is forthwith a lover of war; he may be compared to an isolated piece at draughts.

Now, that man is more of a political animal than bees or any other gregarious animals is evident. Nature, as we often say, makes nothing in vain,⁵ and man is the only animal whom she has endowed with the gift of speech.⁶ And whereas mere voice is but an indication of pleasure or pain, and is therefore found in other animals (for their nature attains to the perception of pleasure and pain and the intimation of them to one another, and no further), the power of speech is intended to set forth the expedient and inexpedient, and therefore likewise the just and the unjust. And it is a characteristic of man that he alone has any sense of good and evil, of just

⁴ *Il.* ix. 63.

⁶ *Cp.* vii. 1332^b 5.

⁵ *Cp.* 1256^b 20.

and unjust, and the like, and the association of living beings who have this sense makes a family and a state.

Further, the state is by nature clearly prior to the family and to the individual, since the whole is of necessity prior to the part; for example, if the whole body be destroyed, there will be no foot or hand, except in an equivocal sense, as we might speak of a stone hand; for when destroyed the hand will be no better than that. But things are defined by their working and power; and we ought not to say that they are the same when they no longer have their proper quality, but only that they have the same name. The proof that the state is a creation of nature and prior to the individual is that the individual, when isolated, is not self-sufficing; and therefore he is like a part in relation to the whole. But he who is unable to live in society, or who has no need because he is sufficient for himself, must be either a beast or a god: he is no part of a state. A social instinct is implanted in all men by nature, and yet he who first founded the state was the greatest of benefactors. For man, when perfected, is the best of animals, but, when separated from law and justice, he is the worst of all; since armed injustice is the more dangerous, and he is equipped at birth with arms, meant to be used by intelligence and virtue, which he may use for the worst ends. Wherefore, if he have not virtue, he is the most unholy and the most savage of animals, and the most full of lust and gluttony. But justice is the bond of men in states, for the administration of justice, which is the determination of what is just,⁷ is the principle of order in political society.

3 Seeing then that the state is made up of households, before speaking of the state we must speak of the man-

⁷ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* v. 1134^a 31.

1253^b agement of the household. The parts of household management correspond to the persons who compose the household, and a complete household consists of slaves and freemen. Now we should begin by examining every-
 5 thing in its fewest possible elements; and the first and fewest possible parts of a family are master and slave, husband and wife, father and children. We have therefore to consider what each of these three relations is and ought to be:—I mean the relation of master and servant,
 10 the marriage relation (the conjunction of man and wife has no name of its own), and thirdly, the procreative relation (this also has no proper name). And there is another element of a household, the so-called art of getting wealth, which, according to some, is identical with household management, according to others, a principal part of it; the nature of this art will also have to be considered by us.

15 Let us first speak of master and slave, looking to the needs of practical life and also seeking to attain some better theory of their relation than exists at present. For some are of opinion that the rule of a master is a science, and that the management of a household, and the mastership of slaves, and the political and royal rule, as I
 20 was saying at the outset,⁸ are all the same. Others affirm that the rule of a master over slaves is contrary to nature, and that the distinction between slave and freeman exists by law only, and not by nature; and being an interference with nature is therefore unjust.

4 Property is a part of the household, and the art of acquiring property is a part of the art of managing the
 25 household; for no man can live well, or indeed live at all, unless he be provided with necessities. And as in the

⁸ Plato in *Pol.* 258 E-259 D, referred to already in 1252^a 7-16.

arts which have a definite sphere the workers must have their own proper instruments for the accomplishment of their work, so it is in the management of a household. Now instruments are of various sorts; some are living, others lifeless; in the rudder, the pilot of a ship has a lifeless, in the look-out man, a living instrument; for in the arts the servant is a kind of instrument. Thus, too, a possession is an instrument for maintaining life. And so, ³⁰ in the arrangement of the family, a slave is a living possession, and property a number of such instruments; and the servant is himself an instrument which takes precedence of all other instruments. For if every instrument could accomplish its own work, obeying or anticipating the will of others, like the statues of Daedalus, or the ³⁵ tripods of Hephaestus, which, says the poet,⁹

‘of their own accord entered the assembly of the Gods’;

if, in like manner, the shuttle would weave and the plectrum touch the lyre without a hand to guide them, chief workmen would not want servants, nor masters slaves. Here, however, another distinction must be ^{1254^a} drawn; the instruments commonly so called are instruments of production, whilst a possession is an instrument of action. The shuttle, for example, is not only of use; but something else is made by it, whereas of a garment or of a bed there is only the use. Further, as production and ⁵ action are different in kind, and both require instruments, the instruments which they employ must likewise differ in kind. But life is action and not production, and therefore the slave is the minister of action. Again, a possession is spoken of as a part is spoken of; for the part is not only a part of something else, but wholly belongs to it; and this is also true of a possession. The master is ¹⁰

⁹ Hom. *Il.* xviii. 376.

only the master of the slave; he does not belong to him, whereas the slave is not only the slave of his master, but wholly belongs to him. Hence we see what is the nature and office of a slave; he who is by nature not his own but
15 another's man, is by nature a slave; and he may be said to be another's man who, being a human being, is also a possession. And a possession may be defined as an instrument of action, separable from the possessor.

5 But is there any one thus intended by nature to be a slave, and for whom such a condition is expedient and right, or rather is not all slavery a violation of nature?

20 There is no difficulty in answering this question, on grounds both of reason and of fact. For that some should rule and others be ruled is a thing not only necessary, but expedient; from the hour of their birth, some are marked out for subjection, others for rule.

And there are many kinds both of rulers and subjects
25 (and that rule is the better which is exercised over better subjects—for example, to rule over men is better than to rule over wild beasts; for the work is better which is executed by better workmen, and where one man rules and another is ruled, they may be said to have a work); for in all things which form a composite whole and which
30 are made up of parts, whether continuous or discrete, a distinction between the ruling and the subject element comes to light. Such a duality exists in living creatures, but not in them only; it originates in the constitution of the universe; even in things which have no life there is a ruling principle, as in a musical mode. But we are wandering from the subject. We will therefore restrict ourselves to the living creature, which, in the first place,
35 consists of soul and body: and of these two, the one is by nature the ruler, and the other the subject. But then

we must look for the intentions of nature in things which retain their nature, and not in things which are corrupted. And therefore we must study the man who is in the most perfect state both of body and soul, for in him we shall see the true relation of the two; although in bad or corrupted natures the body will often appear to rule over the soul, because they are in an evil and unnatural condition. At all events we may firstly observe in living creatures both a despotical and a constitutional rule; for the soul rules the body with a despotical rule, whereas the intellect rules the appetites with a constitutional and royal rule. And it is clear that the rule of the soul over the body, and of the mind and the rational element over the passionate, is natural and expedient; whereas the equality of the two or the rule of the inferior is always hurtful. The same holds good of animals in relation to men; for tame animals have a better nature than wild, and all tame animals are better off when they are ruled by man; for then they are preserved. Again, the male is by nature superior, and the female inferior; and the one rules, and the other is ruled; this principle, of necessity, extends to all mankind. Where then there is such a difference as that between soul and body, or between men and animals (as in the case of those whose business is to use their body, and who can do nothing better), the lower sort are by nature slaves, and it is better for them as for all inferiors that they should be under the rule of a master. For he who can be, and therefore is, another's, and he who participates in rational principle enough to apprehend, but not to have, such a principle, is a slave by nature. Whereas the lower animals cannot even apprehend a principle; they obey their instincts. And indeed the use made of slaves and of tame animals is not very different; for both with their bodies minister to the needs

1254^b
5
10
15
20

25 of life. Nature would like to distinguish between the
bodies of freemen and slaves, making the one strong for
servile labour, the other upright, and although useless
30 for such services, useful for political life in the arts both
of war and peace. But the opposite often happens—that
some have the souls and others have the bodies of free-
men. And doubtless if men differed from one another in
the mere forms of their bodies as much as the statues of
35 the Gods do from men, all would acknowledge that the
inferior class should be slaves of the superior. And if this
is true of the body, how much more just that a similar
distinction should exist in the soul? but the beauty of the
1255^a body is seen, whereas the beauty of the soul is not seen.
It is clear, then, that some men are by nature free, and
others slaves, and that for these latter slavery is both
expedient and right.

6 But that those who take the opposite view have in a
certain way right on their side, may be easily seen. For
the words slavery and slave are used in two senses. There
5 is a slave or slavery by law as well as by nature. The law
of which I speak is a sort of convention—the law by
which whatever is taken in war is supposed to belong to
the victors. But this right many jurists impeach, as they
would an orator who brought forward an unconstitu-
tional measure: they detest the notion that, because one
man has the power of doing violence and is superior in
brute strength, another shall be his slave and subject.
10 Even among philosophers there is a difference of opin-
ion. The origin of the dispute, and what makes the views
invade each other's territory, is as follows: in some sense
virtue, when furnished with means, has actually the
greatest power of exercising force: and as superior
power is only found where there is superior excellence of

some kind, power seems to imply virtue, and the dispute to be simply one about justice (for it is due to one party 15 identifying justice with goodwill,¹⁰ while the other identifies it with the mere rule of the stronger). If these views are thus set out separately, the other views¹¹ have no force or plausibility against the view that the superior in virtue ought to rule, or be master. Others, clinging, as 20 they think, simply to a principle of justice (for law and custom are a sort of justice), assume that slavery in accordance with the custom of war is justified by law, but at the same moment they deny this. For what if the cause of the war be unjust? And again, no one would ever 25 say that he is a slave who is unworthy to be a slave. Were this the case, men of the highest rank would be slaves and the children of slaves if they or their parents chance to have been taken captive and sold. Wherefore Hellenes do not like to call Hellenes slaves, but confine the term to barbarians. Yet, in using this language, they really mean 30 the natural slave of whom we spoke at first; ¹² for it must be admitted that some are slaves everywhere, others nowhere. The same principle applies to nobility. Hellenes regard themselves as noble everywhere, and not only in their own country, but they deem the barbarians noble 35 only when at home, thereby implying that there are two sorts of nobility and freedom, the one absolute, the other relative. The Helen of Theodectes says:

‘Who would presume to call me servant who am on both sides sprung from the stem of the Gods?’

¹⁰ i. e. mutual goodwill, which is held to be incompatible with the relation of master and slave.

¹¹ i. e. those stated in ll. 5–12, that the stronger always has, and that he never has, a right to enslave the weaker. Aristotle finds that these views cannot maintain themselves against his intermediate view, that the superior in *virtue* should rule.

¹² Chap. 5.

What does this mean but that they distinguish freedom
 40 and slavery, noble and humble birth, by the two princi-
 1255^b ples of good and evil? They think that as men and ani-
 mals beget men and animals, so from good men a good
 man springs. But this is what nature, though she may
 intend it, cannot always accomplish.

We see then that there is some foundation for this dif-
 5 ference of opinion, and that all are not either slaves by
 nature or freemen by nature, and also that there is in
 some cases a marked distinction between the two classes,
 rendering it expedient and right for the one to be slaves
 and the others to be masters: the one practising obedi-
 ence, the others exercising the authority and lordship
 which nature intended them to have. The abuse of this
 authority is injurious to both; for the interests of part
 10 and whole,¹³ of body and soul, are the same, and the
 slave is a part of the master, a living but separated part
 of his bodily frame. Hence, where the relation of master
 and slave between them is natural they are friends and
 have a common interest, but where it rests merely on
 15 law and force the reverse is true.

7 The previous remarks are quite enough to show that
 the rule of a master is not a constitutional rule, and that
 all the different kinds of rule are not, as some affirm, the
 same with each other.¹⁴ For there is one rule exercised
 over subjects who are by nature free, another over sub-
 jects who are by nature slaves. The rule of a household
 is a monarchy, for every house is under one head:
 whereas constitutional rule is a government of freemen
 20 and equals. The master is not called a master because

¹³ Cp. 1254^a 8.

¹⁴ Plato, *Polit.* 258 B-259 D, referred to already in 1252^a 7-16, 1253^b 18-20.

he has science,¹⁵ but because he is of a certain character, and the same remark applies to the slave and the free-man. Still there may be a science for the master and a science for the slave. The science of the slave would be such as the man of Syracuse taught, who made money by instructing slaves in their ordinary duties. And such a knowledge may be carried further, so as to include cookery and similar menial arts. For some duties are of the more necessary, others of the more honourable sort; as the proverb says, 'slave before slave, master before master'. But all such branches of knowledge are servile. There is likewise a science of the master, which teaches the use of slaves; for the master as such is concerned, not with the acquisition, but with the use of them. Yet this so-called science is not anything great or wonderful; for the master need only know how to order that which the slave must know how to execute. Hence those who are in a position which places them above toil have stewards who attend to their households while they occupy themselves with philosophy or with politics. But the art of acquiring slaves, I mean of justly acquiring them, differs both from the art of the master and the art of the slave, being a species of hunting or war.¹⁶ Enough of the distinction between master and slave.

40

8 Let us now inquire into property generally, and into the art of getting wealth, in accordance with our usual method,¹⁷ for a slave has been shown¹⁸ to be a part of property. The first question is whether the art of getting wealth is the same with the art of managing a household or a part of it, or instrumental to it; and if the last,

¹⁵ *Polit.* 259 c, 293 c.

¹⁶ Cp. vii. 1333^b 38.

¹⁷ Of understanding the whole by the part, Cp. 1252^a 17.

¹⁸ Chap. 4.

whether in the way that the art of making shuttles is instrumental to the art of weaving, or in the way that the casting of bronze is instrumental to the art of the statuary, for they are not instrumental in the same way, but the one provides tools and the other material; and by material I mean the substratum out of which any work is made; thus wool is the material of the weaver, bronze of the statuary. Now it is easy to see that the art of household management is not identical with the art of getting wealth, for the one uses the material which the other provides. For the art which uses household stores can be no other than the art of household management. There is, however, a doubt whether the art of getting wealth is a part of household management or a distinct art. If the getter of wealth has to consider whence wealth and property can be procured, but there are many sorts of property and riches, then are husbandry, and the care and provision of food in general, parts of the wealth-getting art or distinct arts? Again, there are many sorts of food, and therefore there are many kinds of lives both of animals and men; they must all have food, and the differences in their food have made differences in their ways of life. For of beasts, some are gregarious, others are solitary; they live in the way which is best adapted to sustain them, accordingly as they are carnivorous or herbivorous or omnivorous: and their habits are determined for them by nature in such a manner that they may obtain with greater facility the food of their choice. But, as different species have different tastes, the same things are not naturally pleasant to all of them; and therefore the lives of carnivorous or herbivorous animals further differ among themselves. In the lives of men too there is a great difference. The laziest are shepherds, who lead an idle life, and get their subsistence without trouble

from tame animals; their flocks having to wander from place to place in search of pasture, they are compelled to follow them, cultivating a sort of living farm. Others support themselves by hunting, which is of different kinds. Some, for example, are brigands, others, who dwell near lakes or marshes or rivers or a sea in which there are fish, are fishermen, and others live by the pursuit of birds or wild beasts. The greater number obtain a living from the cultivated fruits of the soil. Such are the modes of subsistence which prevail among those whose industry springs up of itself, and whose food is not acquired by exchange and retail trade—there is the shepherd, the husbandman, the brigand, the fisherman, the hunter. Some gain a comfortable maintenance out of two employments, eking out the deficiencies of one of them by another: thus the life of a shepherd may be combined with that of a brigand, the life of a farmer with that of a hunter. Other modes of life are similarly combined in any way which the needs of men may require. Property, in the sense of a bare livelihood, seems to be given by nature herself to all, both when they are first born, and when they are grown up. For some animals bring forth, together with their offspring, so much food as will last until they are able to supply themselves; of this the vermiparous or oviparous animals are an instance; and the viviparous animals have up to a certain time a supply of food for their young in themselves, which is called milk. In like manner we may infer that, after the birth of animals, plants exist for their sake, and that the other animals exist for the sake of man, the tame for use and food, the wild, if not all, at least the greater part of them, for food, and for the provision of clothing and various instruments. Now if nature makes nothing incomplete, and nothing in vain, the inference must be that she has

made all animals for the sake of man. And so, in one point of view, the art of war is a natural art of acquisition, for the art of acquisition includes hunting, an art which we ought to practise against wild beasts, and
 25 against men who, though intended by nature to be governed, will not submit; for war of such a kind is naturally just.¹⁹

Of the art of acquisition then there is one kind which by nature is a part of the management of a household, in so far as the art of household management must either find ready to hand, or itself provide, such things neces-
 30 sary to life, and useful for the community of the family or state, as can be stored. They are the elements of true riches; for the amount of property which is needed for a good life is not unlimited, although Solon in one of his poems says that

‘No bound to riches has been fixed for man’.

But there is a boundary fixed, just as there is in the other
 35 arts; for the instruments of any art are never unlimited, either in number or size, and riches may be defined as a number of instruments to be used in a household or in a state. And so we see that there is a natural art of acquisition which is practised by managers of households and by statesmen, and what is the reason of this.

40 9 There is another variety of the art of acquisition which is commonly and rightly called an art of wealth-getting, and has in fact suggested the notion that riches
 1257^a and property have no limit. Being nearly connected with the preceding, it is often identified with it. But though they are not very different, neither are they the same.

¹⁹ Cp. 1255^b 38, 1333^b 38.

The kind already described is given by nature, the other is gained by experience and art.

Let us begin our discussion of the question with the 5 following considerations:

Of everything which we possess there are two uses: both belong to the thing as such, but not in the same manner, for one is the proper, and the other the improper or secondary use of it. For example, a shoe is used for wear, and is used for exchange; both are uses of the shoe. He who gives a shoe in exchange for money or food to him 10 who wants one, does indeed use the shoe as a shoe, but this is not its proper or primary purpose, for a shoe is not made to be an object of barter. The same may be said of all possessions, for the art of exchange extends to all of 15 them, and it arises at first from what is natural, from the circumstance that some have too little, others too much. Hence we may infer that retail trade is not a natural part of the art of getting wealth; had it been so, men would have ceased to exchange when they had enough. In the first community, indeed, which is the family, this art is obviously of no use, but it begins to be useful when the 20 society increases. For the members of the family originally had all things in common; later, when the family divided into parts, the parts shared in many things, and different parts in different things, which they had to give in exchange for what they wanted, a kind of barter which is still practised among barbarous nations who exchange 25 with one another the necessities of life and nothing more; giving and receiving wine, for example, in exchange for corn, and the like. This sort of barter is not part of the wealth-getting art and is not contrary to nature, but is needed for the satisfaction of men's natu- 30 ral wants. The other or more complex form of exchange grew, as might have been inferred, out of the simpler.

When the inhabitants of one country became more dependent on those of another, and they imported what they needed, and exported what they had too much of, money necessarily came into use. For the various necessities of life are not easily carried about, and hence men agreed to employ in their dealings with each other something which was intrinsically useful and easily applicable to the purposes of life, for example, iron, silver, and the like. Of this the value was at first measured simply by size and weight, but in process of time they put a stamp upon it, to save the trouble of weighing and to mark the value.

1257^b When the use of coin had once been discovered, out of the barter of necessary articles arose the other art of wealth-getting, namely, retail trade; which was at first probably a simple matter, but became more complicated as soon as men learned by experience whence and by what exchanges the greatest profit might be made. Originating in the use of coin, the art of getting wealth is generally thought to be chiefly concerned with it, and to be the art which produces riches and wealth; having to consider how they may be accumulated. Indeed, riches is assumed by many to be only a quantity of coin, because the arts of getting wealth and retail trade are concerned with coin. Others maintain that coined money is a mere sham, a thing not natural, but conventional only, because, if the users substitute another commodity for it, it is worthless, and because it is not useful as a means to any of the necessities of life, and, indeed, he who is rich in coin may often be in want of necessary food. But how can that be wealth of which a man may have a great abundance and yet perish with hunger, like Midas in the fable, whose insatiable prayer turned everything that was set before him into gold?

Hence men seek after a better notion of riches and of the art of getting wealth than the mere acquisition of coin, and they are right. For natural riches and the natural art of wealth-getting are a different thing; in their true form they are part of the management of a household; whereas retail trade is the art of producing wealth, not in every way, but by exchange. And it is thought to be concerned with coin; for coin is the unit of exchange and the measure or limit of it. And there is no bound to the riches which spring from this art of wealth-getting.²⁰ As in the art of medicine there is no limit to the pursuit of health, and as in the other arts there is no limit to the pursuit of their several ends, for they aim at accomplishing their ends to the uttermost (but of the means there is a limit, for the end is always the limit), so, too, in this art of wealth-getting there is no limit of the end, which is riches of the spurious kind, and the acquisition of wealth. But the art of wealth-getting which consists in household management, on the other hand, has a limit; the unlimited acquisition of wealth is not its business. And, therefore, in one point of view, all riches must have a limit; nevertheless, as a matter of fact, we find the opposite to be the case; for all getters of wealth increase their hoard of coin without limit. The source of the confusion is the near connection between the two kinds of wealth-getting; in either, the instrument is the same, although the use is different, and so they pass into one another; for each is a use of the same property, but with a difference: accumulation is the end in the one case, but there is a further end in the other. Hence some persons are led to believe that getting wealth is the object of household management, and the whole idea of their lives is that they ought either to increase their money without limit, or at any

²⁰ Cp. 1256^b 32.

rate not to lose it. The origin of this disposition in men is that they are intent upon living only, and not upon
1258^a living well; and, as their desires are unlimited, they also desire that the means of gratifying them should be without limit. Those who do aim at a good life seek the means
5 of obtaining bodily pleasures; and, since the enjoyment of these appears to depend on property, they are absorbed in getting wealth: and so there arises the second species of wealth-getting. For, as their enjoyment is in excess, they seek an art which produces the excess of enjoyment; and, if they are not able to supply their pleasures by the art of getting wealth, they try other arts,
10 using in turn every faculty in a manner contrary to nature. The quality of courage, for example, is not intended to make wealth, but to inspire confidence; neither is this the aim of the general's or of the physician's art; but the one aims at victory and the other at health. Nevertheless, some men turn every quality or art into a means of getting wealth; this they conceive to be the end, and to the promotion of the end they think all things must contribute.

Thus, then, we have considered the art of wealth-get-
15 ting which is unnecessary, and why men want it; and also the necessary art of wealth-getting, which we have seen to be different from the other, and to be a natural part of the art of managing a household, concerned with the provision of food, not, however, like the former kind, unlimited, but having a limit.

10 And we have found the answer to our original question,²¹ Whether the art of getting wealth is the business of the manager of a household and of the statesman or
20 not their business?—viz. that wealth is presupposed by

²¹ 1256^a 3.

them. For as political science does not make men, but takes them from nature and uses them, so too nature provides them with earth or sea or the like as a source of food. At this stage begins the duty of the manager of a household, who has to order the things which nature supplies;—he may be compared to the weaver who has not to make but to use wool, and to know, too, what sort of wool is good and serviceable or bad and unserviceable. Were this otherwise, it would be difficult to see why the art of getting wealth is a part of the management of a household and the art of medicine not; for surely the members of a household must have health just as they must have life or any other necessary. The answer is that as from one point of view the master of the house and the ruler of the state have to consider about health, from another point of view not they but the physician; so in one way the art of household management, in another way the subordinate art, has to consider about wealth. But, strictly speaking, as I have already said, the means of life must be provided beforehand by nature; for the business of nature is to furnish food to that which is born, and the food of the offspring is always what remains over of that from which it is produced.²² Wherefore the art of getting wealth out of fruits and animals is always natural.

There are two sorts of wealth-getting, as I have said²³; one is a part of household management, the other is retail trade: the former necessary and honourable, while that which consists in exchange is justly censured; for it is unnatural, and a mode by which men gain from one another. The most hated sort, and with the greatest reason, is usury, which makes a gain out of money itself, and not from the natural object of it. For money was intended to

²² Cp. 1256^b 10.

²³ 1256^a 15–1258^a 18.

be used in exchange, but not to increase at interest. And
5 this term interest,²⁴ which means the birth of money
from money, is applied to the breeding of money because
the offspring resembles the parent. Wherefore of all
modes of getting wealth this is the most unnatural.

11 Enough has been said about the theory of wealth-
10 getting; we will now proceed to the practical part. The
discussion of such matters is not unworthy of philosophy,
but to be engaged in them practically is illiberal and irk-
some. The useful parts of wealth-getting are, first, the
knowledge of live-stock—which are most profitable, and
where, and how—as, for example, what sort of horses or
sheep or oxen or any other animals are most likely to
15 give a return. A man ought to know which of these pay
better than others, and which pay best in particular
places, for some do better in one place and some in an-
other. Secondly, husbandry, which may be either tillage
or planting, and the keeping of bees and of fish, or fowl,
or of any animals which may be useful to man. These
20 are the divisions of the true or proper art of wealth-get-
ting and come first. Of the other, which consists in ex-
change, the first and most important division is com-
merce (of which there are three kinds—the provision of
a ship, the conveyance of goods, exposure for sale—these
again differing as they are safer or more profitable), the
25 second is usury, the third, service for hire—of this, one
kind is employed in the mechanical arts, the other in
unskilled and bodily labour. There is still a third sort of
wealth-getting intermediate between this and the first or
natural mode which is partly natural, but is also con-
cerned with exchange, viz., the industries that make their
30 profit from the earth, and from things growing from the

²⁴ *tokos*, lit. 'offspring'.

earth which, although they bear no fruit, are nevertheless profitable; for example, the cutting of timber and all mining. The art of mining, by which minerals are obtained, itself has many branches, for there are various kinds of things dug out of the earth. Of the several divisions of wealth-getting I now speak generally; a minute consideration of them might be useful in practice, but it would be tiresome to dwell upon them at greater length now.

Those occupations are most truly arts in which there 35 is the least element of chance; they are the meanest in which the body is most deteriorated, the most servile in which there is the greatest use of the body, and the most illiberal in which there is the least need of excellence.

Works have been written upon these subjects by various persons; for example, by Chares the Parian, and 40 Apollodorus the Lemnian, who have treated of Tillage and Planting, while others have treated of other 1259^a branches; any one who cares for such matters may refer to their writings. It would be well also to collect the scattered stories of the ways in which individuals have succeeded in amassing a fortune; for all this is useful to persons who value the art of getting wealth. There is the 5 anecdote of Thales the Milesian and his financial device, which involves a principle of universal application, but is attributed to him on account of his reputation for wisdom. He was reproached for his poverty, which was supposed to show that philosophy was of no use. According 10 to the story, he knew by his skill in the stars while it was yet winter that there would be a great harvest of olives in the coming year; so, having a little money, he gave deposits for the use of all the olive-presses in Chios and Miletus, which he hired at a low price because no one bid against him. When the harvest-time came, and many

15 were wanted all at once and of a sudden, he let them out at any rate which he pleased, and made a quantity of money. Thus he showed the world that philosophers can easily be rich if they like, but that their ambition is of another sort. He is supposed to have given a striking proof of his wisdom, but, as I was saying, his device for
 20 getting wealth is of universal application, and is nothing but the creation of a monopoly. It is an art often practised by cities when they are in want of money; they make a monopoly of provisions.

There was a man of Sicily, who, having money deposited with him, bought up all the iron from the iron mines;
 25 afterwards, when the merchants from their various markets came to buy, he was the only seller, and without much increasing the price he gained 200 per cent. Which when Dionysius heard, he told him that he might take away his money, but that he must not remain at Syracuse, for he thought that the man had discovered a way
 30 of making money which was injurious to his own interests. He made the same discovery as Thales; they both contrived to create a monopoly for themselves. And statesmen as well ought to know these things; for a state is often as much in want of money and of such devices for obtaining it as a household, or even more so; hence
 35 some public men devote themselves entirely to finance.

12 Of household management we have seen²⁵ that there are three parts—one is the rule of a master over slaves, which has been discussed already,²⁶ another of a father, and the third of a husband. A husband and
 40 father, we saw, rules over wife and children, both free, but the rule differs, the rule over his children being a
 (1259^b royal, over his wife a constitutional rule. For although

²⁵ 1253^b 3-II.

²⁶ 1253^b 14-1255^b 39.

there may be exceptions to the order of nature, the male is by nature fitter for command than the female, just as the elder and full-grown is superior to the younger and more immature. But in most constitutional states the 5 citizens rule and are ruled by turns, for the idea of a constitutional state implies that the natures of the citizens are equal, and do not differ at all.²⁷ Nevertheless, when one rules and the other is ruled we endeavour to create a difference of outward forms and names and titles of respect, which may be illustrated by the saying of Amasis about his foot-pan.²⁸ The relation of the male to the female is of this kind, but there the inequality is permanent. The rule of a father over his children is 10 royal, for he rules by virtue both of love and of the respect due to age, exercising a kind of royal power. And therefore Homer has appropriately called Zeus 'father of Gods and men', because he is the king of them all. For a king is the natural superior of his subjects, but he should be of the same kin or kind with them, and such 15 is the relation of elder and younger, of father and son.

13 Thus it is clear that household management attends more to men than to the acquisition of inanimate things, and to human excellence more than to the excellence of property which we call wealth, and to the virtue of free- 20 men more than to the virtue of slaves. A question may indeed be raised, whether there is any excellence at all in a slave beyond and higher than merely instrumental and ministerial qualities—whether he can have the virtues of temperance, courage, justice, and the like; or whether slaves possess only bodily and ministerial quali- 25 ties. And, whichever way we answer the question, a difficulty arises; for, if they have virtue, in what will they

²⁷ Cp. ii. 1261^a 39, iii. 1288^a 12.

²⁸ Herod. ii. 172.

differ from freemen? On the other hand, since they are men and share in rational principle, it seems absurd to say that they have no virtue. A similar question may be
30 raised about women and children, whether they too have virtues: ought a woman to be temperate and brave and just, and is a child to be called temperate, and intemperate, or not? So in general we may ask about the natural ruler, and the natural subject, whether they have the same or different virtues. For if a noble nature is equally
35 required in both, why should one of them always rule, and the other always be ruled? Nor can we say that this is a question of degree, for the difference between ruler and subject is a difference of kind, which the difference of more and less never is. Yet how strange is the supposition that the one ought, and that the other ought not, to
40 have virtue! For if the ruler is intemperate and unjust, 1260^a how can he rule well? if the subject, how can he obey well? If he be licentious and cowardly, he will certainly not do his duty. It is evident, therefore, that both of them must have a share of virtue, but varying as natural subjects also vary among themselves. Here the very constitution of the soul has shown us the way; in it one part
5 naturally rules, and the other is subject, and the virtue of the ruler we maintain to be different from that of the subject;—the one being the virtue of the rational, and the other of the irrational part. Now, it is obvious that the same principle applies generally, and therefore almost all things rule and are ruled according to nature. But the kind of rule differs;—the freeman rules over the slave after another manner from that in which the male
10 rules over the female, or the man over the child; although the parts of the soul are present in all of them, they are present in different degrees. For the slave has no deliberative faculty at all; the woman has, but it is without au-

thority, and the child has, but it is immature. So it must necessarily be supposed to be with the moral virtues ¹⁵ also; all should partake of them, but only in such manner and degree as is required by each for the fulfilment of his duty. Hence the ruler ought to have moral virtue in perfection, for his function, taken absolutely, demands a master artificer, and rational principle is such an artificer; the subjects, on the other hand, require only that measure of virtue which is proper to each of them. ²⁰ Clearly, then, moral virtue belongs to all of them; but the temperance of a man and of a woman, or the courage and justice of a man and of a woman, are not, as Socrates maintained,²⁹ the same; the courage of a man is shown in commanding, of a woman in obeying. And this holds of all other virtues, as will be more clearly seen if we look ²⁵ at them in detail, for those who say generally that virtue consists in a good disposition of the soul, or in doing rightly, or the like, only deceive themselves. Far better than such definitions is their mode of speaking, who, like Gorgias,³⁰ enumerate the virtues. All classes must be deemed to have their special attributes; as the poet says of women,

‘Silence is a woman’s glory’,

30

but this is not equally the glory of man. The child is imperfect, and therefore obviously his virtue is not relative to himself alone, but to the perfect man and to his teacher, and in like manner the virtue of the slave is relative to a master. Now we determined³¹ that a slave is useful for the wants of life, and therefore he will obviously require only so much virtue as will prevent him ³⁵ from failing in his duty through cowardice or lack of

²⁹ Plato, *Meno*, 72 A-73 C.

³¹ 1254^b 16-39, Cf. 1259^b 25 sq.

³⁰ *Meno*, 71 E, 72 A.

self-control. Some one will ask whether, if what we are saying is true, virtue will not be required also in the artisans, for they often fail in their work through the lack of self-control? But is there not a great difference in the two cases? For the slave shares in his master's life; 40 the artisan is less closely connected with him, and only attains excellence in proportion as he becomes a slave. 1260^b The meaner sort of mechanic has a special and separate slavery; and whereas the slave exists by nature, not so the shoemaker or other artisan. It is manifest, then, that the master ought to be the source of such excellence in the slave, and not a mere possessor of the art of mastership which trains the slave in his duties.³² Wherefore they are mistaken who forbid us to converse with slaves and say that we should employ command only,³³ for slaves stand even more in need of admonition than children.

So much for this subject; the relations of husband and wife, parent and child, their several virtues, what in their intercourse with one another is good, and what is 10 evil, and how we may pursue the good and escape the evil, will have to be discussed when we speak of the different forms of government.³⁴ For, inasmuch as every family is a part of a state, and these relationships are the parts of a family, and the virtue of the part must have regard to the virtue of the whole, women and children 15 must be trained by education with an eye to the constitution,³⁵ if the virtues of either of them are supposed to make any difference in the virtues of the state. And they must make a difference: for the children grow up to be

³² Cp. 1255^b 23, 31-35.

³³ Plato, *Laws*, vi. 777 E.

³⁴ The question is not actually discussed in the *Politics*.

³⁵ Cp. v. 1310^a 12-36, viii. 1337^a 11-18.

citizens, and half the free persons in a state are women.³⁶ 20

Of these matters, enough has been said; of what remains, let us speak at another time. Regarding, then, our present inquiry as complete, we will make a new beginning. And, first, let us examine the various theories of a perfect state.

³⁶ Plato, *Laws*, vi. 781 A.

BOOK II

1 Our purpose is to consider what form of political
community is best of all for those who are most able to
30 realize their ideal of life. We must therefore examine
not only this but other constitutions, both such as actu-
ally exist in well-governed states, and any theoretical
forms which are held in esteem; that what is good and
useful may be brought to light. And let no one suppose
that in seeking for something beyond them we are anx-
ious to make a sophistical display at any cost; we only
35 undertake this inquiry because all the constitutions with
which we are acquainted are faulty.

We will begin with the natural beginning of the sub-
ject. Three alternatives are conceivable: The members
of a state must either have (1) all things or (2) nothing
in common, or (3) some things in common and some not.
That they should have nothing in common is clearly
40 impossible, for the constitution is a community, and must
1261^a at any rate have a common place—one city will be in one
place, and the citizens are those who share in that one
city. But should a well-ordered state have all things, as
far as may be, in common, or some only and not others?
For the citizens might conceivably have wives and chil-
5 dren and property in common, as Socrates proposes in

the *Republic* of Plato.¹ Which is better, our present condition, or the proposed new order of society?

2 There are many difficulties in the community of 10 women. And the principle on which Socrates rests the necessity of such an institution evidently is not established by his arguments. Further, as a means to the end which he ascribes to the state, the scheme, taken literally, is impracticable, and how we are to interpret it is nowhere precisely stated. I am speaking of the premiss 15 from which the argument of Socrates proceeds, 'that the greater the unity of the state the better'. Is it not obvious that a state may at length attain such a degree of unity as to be no longer a state?—since the nature of a state is to be a plurality, and in tending to greater unity, from being a state, it becomes a family, and from being a fam- 20 ily, an individual; for the family may be said to be more than the state, and the individual than the family. So that we ought not to attain this greatest unity even if we could, for it would be the destruction of the state. Again, a state is not made up only of so many men, but of different kinds of men; for similars do not constitute a state. It is not like a military alliance. The usefulness of 25 the latter depends upon its quantity even where there is no difference in quality (for mutual protection is the end aimed at), just as a greater weight of anything is more useful than a less (in like manner, a state differs from a nation, when the nation has not its population organized in villages, but lives an Arcadian sort of life); but the elements out of which a unity is to be formed differ in kind. Wherefore the principle of compensation, as I have 30 already remarked in the *Ethics*,² is the salvation of

¹ *Rep.* iv. 423 E, v. 457 C, 462 B.

² *Nic. Eth.* v. 1132^b 32.

states. Even among freemen and equals this is a principle which must be maintained, for they cannot all rule together, but must change at the end of a year or some other period of time or in some order of succession. The result is that upon this plan they all govern; just as if
 35 shoemakers and carpenters were to exchange their occupations, and the same persons did not always continue shoemakers and carpenters. And since it is better that this should be so in politics as well, it is clear that while there should be continuance of the same persons in power where this is possible, yet where this is not possible by
 1261^b reason of the natural equality of the citizens, and at the same time it is just that all should share in the government (whether to govern be a good thing or a bad³), an approximation to this is that equals should in turn retire from office and should, apart from official position, be treated alike.⁴ Thus the one party rule and the others
 5 are ruled in turn, as if they were no longer the same persons. In like manner when they hold office there is a variety in the offices held. Hence it is evident that a city is not by nature one in that sense which some persons affirm; and that what is said to be the greatest good of cities is in reality their destruction; but surely the good
 10 of things must be that which preserves them.⁵ Again, in another point of view, this extreme unification of the state is clearly not good; for a family is more self-sufficing than an individual, and a city than a family, and a city only comes into being when the community is large enough to be self-sufficing. If then self-sufficiency is to be desired, the lesser degree of unity is more desirable
 15 than the greater.

³ Cp. *Pl. Rep.* i. 345-6.

⁴ Cp. i. 1259^b 4, iii. 1288^a 12

⁵ Cp. *Pl. Rep.* i. 353.

3 But, even supposing that it were best for the community to have the greatest degree of unity, this unity is by no means proved to follow from the fact 'of all men saying "mine" and "not mine" at the same instant of time', which, according to Socrates,⁶ is the sign of perfect unity in a state. For the word 'all' is ambiguous. If the meaning be that every individual says 'mine' and 'not mine' at the same time, then perhaps the result at which Socrates aims may be in some degree accomplished; each man will call the same person his own son and the same person his own wife, and so of his property and of all that falls to his lot. This, however, is not the way in which people would speak who had their wives and children in common; they would say 'all' but not 'each'. In like manner their property would be described 25 as belonging to them, not severally but collectively. There is an obvious fallacy in the term 'all': like some other words, 'both', 'odd', 'even', it is ambiguous, and even in abstract argument becomes a source of logical puzzles. That all persons call the same thing mine in the 30 sense in which each does so may be a fine thing, but it is impracticable; or if the words are taken in the other sense, such a unity in no way conduces to harmony. And there is another objection to the proposal. For that which is common to the greatest number has the least care bestowed upon it. Every one thinks chiefly of his own, hardly at all of the common interest; and only when he is himself concerned as an individual. For besides other 35 considerations, everybody is more inclined to neglect the duty which he expects another to fulfil; as in families many attendants are often less useful than a few. Each citizen will have a thousand sons who will not be his sons

⁶ Pl. *Rep.* v. 462 c.

1262^a individually, but anybody will be equally the son of anybody, and will therefore be neglected by all alike. Further, upon this principle, every one will use the word 'mine' of one who is prospering or the reverse,⁷ however small a fraction he may himself be of the whole number; the same boy will be 'my son', 'so and so's son', the son of each of the thousand, or whatever be the number of
5 the citizens; and even about this he will not be positive; for it is impossible to know who chanced to have a child, or whether, if one came into existence, it has survived. But which is better—for each to say 'mine' in this way, making a man the same relation to two thousand or ten thousand citizens, or to use the word 'mine' in the ordi-
10 nary and more restricted sense? For usually the same person is called by one man his own son whom another calls his own brother or cousin or kinsman—blood relation or connexion by marriage either of himself or of some relation of his, and yet another his clansman or tribesman; and how much better is it to be the real cousin of somebody than to be a son after Plato's fashion! Nor is there any way of preventing brothers and children and
15 fathers and mothers from sometimes recognizing one another; for children are born like their parents, and they will necessarily be finding indications of their relationship to one another. Geographers declare such to be the fact; they say that in part of Upper Libya, where
20 the women are common, nevertheless the children who are born are assigned to their respective fathers on the ground of their likeness. And some women, like the females of other animals—for example, mares and cows—have a strong tendency to produce offspring resembling their parents, as was the case with the Pharsalian mare called Honest.

⁷ Cp. *Rep.* v. 463 E.

4 Other evils, against which it is not easy for the 25
authors of such a community to guard, will be assaults
and homicides, voluntary as well as involuntary, quarrels
and slanders, all which are most unholy acts when com-
mitted against fathers and mothers and near relations,
but not equally unholy when there is no relationship.
Moreover, they are much more likely to occur if the rela- 30
tionship is unknown, and, when they have occurred, the
customary expiations of them cannot be made. Again,
how strange it is that Socrates,⁸ after having made the
children common, should hinder lovers from carnal inter-
course only, but should permit love and familiarities 35
between father and son or between brother and brother,
than which nothing can be more unseemly, since even
without them love of this sort is improper. How strange,
too, to forbid intercourse for no other reason than the
violence of the pleasure, as though the relationship of
father and son or of brothers with one another made no
difference.

This community of wives and children seems better 40
suited to the husbandmen than to the guardians, for if 1262^a
they have wives and children in common, they will be
bound to one another by weaker ties, as a subject class
should be, and they will remain obedient and not rebel.⁹
In a word, the result of such a law would be just the op-
posite of that which good laws ought to have, and the
intention of Socrates in making these regulations about 5
women and children would defeat itself. For friendship
we believe to be the greatest good of states¹⁰ and the
preservative of them against revolutions; neither is there
anything which Socrates so greatly lauds as the unity of 10
the state which he and all the world declare to be cre-

⁸ *Rep.* iii. 403 A-C.

¹⁰ *Cp. Nic. Eth.* viii. 1155^a 22.

⁹ *Cp.* vii. 1330^a 28.

ated by friendship. But the unity which he commends¹¹ would be like that of the lovers in the *Symposium*,¹² who, as Aristophanes says, desire to grow together in the excess of their affection, and from being two to become one, 15 in which case one or both would certainly perish. Whereas in a state having women and children common, love will be watery; and the father will certainly not say 'my son', or the son 'my father'.¹³ As a little sweet wine mingled with a great deal of water is imperceptible in the mixture, so, in this sort of community, the idea of rela- 20 tionship which is based upon these names will be lost; there is no reason why the so-called father should care about the son, or the son about the father, or brothers about one another. Of the two qualities which chiefly inspire regard and affection—that a thing is your own and that it is your only one—neither can exist in such a state as this.

Again, the transfer of children as soon as they are born 25 from the rank of husbandmen or of artisans to that of guardians, and from the rank of guardians into a lower rank,¹⁴ will be very difficult to arrange; the givers or transferrers cannot but know whom they are giving and transferring, and to whom. And the previously men- 30 tioned¹⁵ evils, such as assaults, unlawful loves, homicides, will happen more often amongst those who are transferred to the lower classes, or who have a place assigned to them among the guardians; for they will no longer call the members of the class they have left brothers, and children, and fathers, and mothers, and will not, therefore, be afraid of committing any crimes by reason of consanguinity. Touching the community of wives and 35 children, let this be our conclusion.

¹¹ Cp. c. 2.¹² *Symp.* 191 A, 192 C.¹³ Cp. c. 3.¹⁴ *Rep.* iii. 415 B.¹⁵ 225-40.

5 Next let us consider what should be our arrangements about property: should the citizens of the perfect state have their possessions in common or not? This 40 question may be discussed separately from the enact- 1263^aments about women and children. Even supposing that the women and children belong to individuals, according to the custom which is at present universal, may there not be an advantage in having and using possessions in common? Three cases are possible: (1) the soil may be appropriated, but the produce may be thrown for consumption into the common stock; and this is the practice of some nations. Or (2), the soil may be common, and 5 may be cultivated in common, but the produce divided among individuals for their private use; this is a form of common property which is said to exist among certain barbarians. Or (3), the soil and the produce may be alike common.

When the husbandmen are not the owners, the case will be different and easier to deal with; but when they 10 till the ground for themselves the question of ownership will give a world of trouble. If they do not share equally in enjoyments and toils, those who labour much and get little will necessarily complain of those who labour little and receive or consume much. But indeed there is always 15 a difficulty in men living together and having all human relations in common, but especially in their having common property. The partnerships of fellow-travellers are an example to the point; for they generally fall out over everyday matters and quarrel about any trifle which turns up. So with servants: we are most liable to take 20 offense at those with whom we most frequently come into contact in daily life.

These are only some of the disadvantages which attend the community of property; the present arrange-

ment, if improved as it might be by good customs and laws, would be far better, and would have the advantages of both systems. Property should be in a certain sense common, but, as a general rule, private; for, when every one has a distinct interest,¹⁶ men will not complain of one another, and they will make more progress, because every one will be attending to his own business. And yet by reason of goodness, and in respect of use, 'Friends', as the proverb says, 'will have all things common.'¹⁷ Even now there are traces of such a principle, showing that it is not impracticable, but, in well-ordered states, exists already to a certain extent and may be carried further. For, although every man has his own property, some things he will place at the disposal of his friends, while of others he shares the use with them. The Lacedaemonians, for example, use one another's slaves, and horses, and dogs, as if they were their own; and when they lack provisions on a journey, they appropriate what they find in the fields throughout the country. It is clearly better that property should be private, but the use of it common; and the special business of the legislator is to create in men this benevolent disposition. Again, how immeasurably greater is the pleasure, when a man feels a thing to be his own; for surely the love of self¹⁸ is a feeling implanted by nature and not given in vain, although selfishness is rightly censured; this, however, is not the mere love of self, but the love of self in excess, like the miser's love of money; for all, or almost all, men love money and other such objects in a measure. And further, there is the greatest pleasure in doing a kindness or service to friends or guests or companions, which can only be rendered when a man has private property. These

¹⁶ Cp. *Rep.* ii. 374.

¹⁸ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* ix. 8.

¹⁷ Cp. *Rep.* iv. 424 A.

advantages are lost by excessive unification of the state. The exhibition of two virtues, besides, is visibly annihilated in such a state: first, temperance towards women 10 (for it is an honourable action to abstain from another's wife for temperance sake); secondly, liberality in the matter of property. No one, when men have all things in common, will any longer set an example of liberality or do any liberal action; for liberality consists in the use which is made of property.¹⁹

Such legislation may have a specious appearance of 15 benevolence; men readily listen to it, and are easily induced to believe that in some wonderful manner everybody will become everybody's friend, especially when some one²⁰ is heard denouncing the evils now existing in states, suits about contracts, convictions for perjury, 20 flatteries of rich men and the like, which are said to arise out of the possession of private property. These evils, however, are due to a very different cause—the wickedness of human nature. Indeed, we see that there is much more quarrelling among those who have all things in common, though there are not many of them when compared 25 with the vast numbers who have private property.

Again, we ought to reckon, not only the evils from which the citizens will be saved, but also the advantages which they will lose. The life which they are to lead ap- 30 pears to be quite impracticable. The error of Socrates must be attributed to the false notion of unity from which he starts.²¹ Unity there should be, both of the family and of the state, but in some respects only. For there is a point at which a state may attain such a degree of unity as to be no longer a state, or at which, without actually ceasing to exist, it will become an inferior state, like har- 35

¹⁹ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* iv. 1119^b 22.

²⁰ *Rep.* v. 464, 465.

²¹ Cp. c. 2.

mony passing into unison, or rhythm which has been reduced to a single foot. The state, as I was saying, is a plurality,²² which should be united and made into a community by education; and it is strange that the author of a system of education which he thinks will make the state virtuous, should expect to improve his citizens by
40 regulations of this sort, and not by philosophy or by customs and laws, like those which prevail at Sparta and
1264^a Crete respecting common meals, whereby the legislator has made property common. Let us remember that we should not disregard the experience of ages; in the multitude of years these things, if they were good, would certainly not have been unknown; for almost everything has been found out, although sometimes they are not put together; in other cases men do not use the knowledge
5 which they have. Great light would be thrown on this subject if we could see such a form of government in the actual process of construction; for the legislator could not form a state at all without distributing and dividing its constituents into associations for common meals, and into phratries and tribes. But all this legislation ends
10 only in forbidding agriculture to the guardians, a prohibition which the Lacedaemonians try to enforce already.

But, indeed, Socrates has not said, nor is it easy to decide, what in such a community will be the general form of the state. The citizens who are not guardians are the majority, and about them nothing has been determined: are the husbandmen, too, to have their property
15 in common? Or is each individual to have his own? and are the wives and children to be individual or common? If, like the guardians, they are to have all things in common, in what do they differ from them, or what will they

²² Cp. 1261^a 18.

gain by submitting to their government? Or, upon what principle would they submit, unless indeed the govern- 20 ing class adopt the ingenious policy of the Cretans, who give their slaves the same institutions as their own, but forbid them gymnastic exercises and the possession of arms. If, on the other hand, the inferior classes are to be like other cities in respect of marriage and property, what will be the form of the community? Must it not 25 contain two states in one,²³ each hostile to the other? He makes the guardians into a mere occupying garrison, while the husbandmen and artisans and the rest are the real citizens. But if so the suits and quarrels, and all the evils which Socrates affirms²⁴ to exist in other states, will exist equally among them. He says indeed that, hav- 30 ing so good an education, the citizens will not need many laws, for example laws about the city or about the markets;²⁵ but then he confines his education to the guardians. Again, he makes the husbandmen owners of the property upon condition of their paying a tribute.²⁶ But in that case they are likely to be much more unmanageable and conceited than the Helots, or Penestae, or slaves in general.²⁷ And whether community of wives and prop- 35 erty be necessary for the lower equally with the higher class or not, and the questions akin to this, what will be the education, form of government, laws of the lower class, Socrates has nowhere determined: neither is it easy to discover this, nor is their character of small importance if the common life of the guardians is to be 40 maintained.

Again, if Socrates makes the women common, and 1264¹ retains private property, the men will see to the fields, but who will see to the house? And who will do so if the

²³ Cp. *Rep.* iv. 422 E.

²⁵ *Rep.* iv. 425 D.

²⁶ *Rep.* v. 464 C.

²⁴ *Rep.* v. 464, 465.

²⁷ Cp. 1269^a 36.

agricultural class have both their property and their wives in common? Once more: it is absurd to argue, 5 from the analogy of the animals, that men and women should follow the same pursuits,²⁸ for animals have not to manage a household. The government, too, as constituted by Socrates, contains elements of danger; for he makes the same persons always rule. And if this is often a cause of disturbance among the meaner sort, how much 10 more among high-spirited warriors? But that the persons whom he makes rulers must be the same is evident; for the gold which the God mingles in the souls of men is not at one time given to one, at another time to another, but always to the same: as he says, 'God mingles gold in some, and silver in others, from their very birth; but 15 brass and iron in those who are meant to be artisans and husbandmen.'²⁹ Again, he deprives the guardians even of happiness, and says that the legislator ought to make the whole state happy.³⁰ But the whole cannot be happy unless most, or all, or some of its parts enjoy happiness.³¹ In this respect happiness is not like the even principle in 20 numbers, which may exist only in the whole, but in neither of the parts; not so happiness. And if the guardians are not happy, who are? Surely not the artisans, or the common people. The Republic of which Socrates discusses 25 courses has all these difficulties, and others quite as great.

6 The same, or nearly the same, objections apply to Plato's later work, the *Laws*, and therefore we had better examine briefly the constitution which is therein described. In the *Republic*, Socrates has definitely settled 30 in all a few questions only; such as the community of women and children, the community of property, and

²⁸ Cp. *Rep.* v. 451 D.

³⁰ *Rep.* iv. 419, 420.

²⁹ Cp. *Rep.* iii. 415 A.

³¹ Cp. vii. 1329^a 23.

the constitution of the state. The population is divided into two classes—one of husbandmen, and the other of warriors;³² from this latter is taken a third class of counsellors and rulers of the state.³³ But Socrates has not determined whether the husbandmen and artisans are to have a share in the government, and whether they, 3+ too, are to carry arms and share in military service, or not. He certainly thinks³⁴ that the women ought to share in the education of the guardians, and to fight by their side. The remainder of the work is filled up with digressions foreign to the main subject, and with discussions 40 about the education of the guardians. In the *Laws* there 1265^a is hardly anything but laws; not much is said about the constitution. This, which he had intended to make more of the ordinary type, he gradually brings round to the other or ideal form. For with the exception of the community of women and property, he supposes everything 5 to be the same in both states; there is to be the same education; the citizens of both are to live free from servile occupations, and there are to be common meals in both. The only difference is that in the *Laws*, the common meals are extended to women,³⁵ and the warriors number 5000,³⁶ but in the *Republic* only 1000.³⁷

The discourses of Socrates are never commonplace; 10 they always exhibit grace and originality and thought; but perfection in everything can hardly be expected. We must not overlook the fact that the number of 5000 citizens, just now mentioned, will require a territory as large as Babylon, or some other huge site, if so many persons 15 are to be supported in idleness, together with their women and attendants, who will be a multitude many

³² *Rep.* ii. 373 E.

³⁵ *Laws*, vi. 780 E.

³³ *Rep.* iii. 412 B.

³⁶ *Laws*, v. 737 E.

³⁴ *Rep.* v. 451 E.

³⁷ *Rep.* iv. 423 A.

times as great. In framing an ideal we may assume what we wish, but should avoid impossibilities.³⁸

It is said that the legislator ought to have his eye directed to two points—the people and the country.³⁹ But neighbouring countries also must not be forgotten by him,⁴⁰ firstly because the state for which he legislates is to have a political and not an isolated life.⁴¹ For a state must have such a military force as will be serviceable against her neighbours, and not merely useful at home. Even if the life of action is not admitted to be the best, either for individuals or states,⁴² still a city should be formidable to enemies, whether invading or retreating.

There is another point: Should not the amount of property be defined in some way which differs from this by being clearer? For Socrates says that a man should have so much property as will enable him to live temperately,⁴³ which is only a way of saying 'to live well'; this is too general a conception. Further, a man may live temperately and yet miserably. A better definition would be that a man must have so much property as will enable him to live not only temperately but liberally;⁴⁴ if the two are parted, liberality will combine with luxury; temperance will be associated with toil. For liberality and temperance are the only eligible qualities which have to do with the use of property. A man cannot use property with mildness or courage, but temperately and liberally he may; and therefore the practice of these virtues is inseparable from property. There is an inconsistency, too, in equalizing the property and not regulating the number of the citizens; ⁴⁵ the population is to remain unlim-

³⁸ Cp. vii. 1325^b 38.

⁴⁰ Cp. 1267^a 19.

⁴² Cp. vii. c. 2. and 3.

⁴⁴ Cp. vii. 1326^b 30.

³⁹ Perhaps *Laws*, iv. 704–709, and v. 747 D.

⁴¹ Cp. vii. 1327^a 41.

⁴³ *Laws*, v. 737 D.

⁴⁵ But see *Laws*, v. 740 B–741 A.

ited, and he thinks that it will be sufficiently equalized 40
 by a certain number of marriages being unfruitful, how- 1265^r
 ever many are born to others, because he finds this to be
 the case in existing states. But greater care will be re-
 quired than now; for among ourselves, whatever may be
 the number of citizens, the property is always distributed
 among them, and therefore no one is in want; but, if the
 property were incapable of division as in the *Laws*, the 5
 supernumeraries, whether few or many, would get nothing.
 One would have thought that it was even more necessary
 to limit population than property; and that the limit
 should be fixed by calculating the chances of mortality
 in the children, and of sterility in married persons.
 The neglect of this subject, which in existing states is so 10
 common, is a never-failing cause of poverty among the
 citizens; and poverty is the parent of revolution and
 crime. Pheidon the Corinthian, who was one of the most
 ancient legislators, thought that the families and the
 number of citizens ought to remain the same, although 15
 originally all the lots may have been of different sizes:
 but in the *Laws* the opposite principle is maintained.
 What in our opinion is the right arrangement will have
 to be explained hereafter.⁴⁶

There is another omission in the *Laws*: Socrates does
 not tell us how the rulers differ from their subjects; he
 only says that they should be related as the warp and the 20
 woof, which are made out of different wools.⁴⁷ He allows
 that a man's whole property may be increased fivefold,⁴⁸
 but why should not his land also increase to a certain
 extent? Again, will the good management of a household
 be promoted by his arrangement of homesteads? For he 25

⁴⁶ Cp. vii. 1326^b 26-32, 1330^a 9-18, 1335^b 19-26; but the promise is hardly fulfilled

⁴⁷ *Laws*, v. 734 E, 735 A.

⁴⁸ *Laws*, v. 744 E.

assigns to each individual two homesteads in separate places,⁴⁹ and it is difficult to live in two houses.

The whole system of government tends to be neither democracy nor oligarchy, but something in a mean between them, which is usually called a polity, and is composed of the heavy-armed soldiers. Now, if he intended to frame a constitution which would suit the greatest
 30 number of states, he was very likely right, but not if he meant to say that this constitutional form came nearest to his first or ideal state; for many would prefer the Lacedaemonian, or, possibly, some other more aristocratic government. Some, indeed, say that the best constitution is a combination of all existing forms, and they
 35 praise the Lacedaemonian⁵⁰ because it is made up of oligarchy, monarchy, and democracy, the king forming the monarchy, and the council of elders the oligarchy, while the democratic element is represented by the Ephors; for the Ephors are selected from the people.
 40 Others, however, declare the Ephoralty to be a tyranny, and find the element of democracy in the common meals
 1266^a and in the habits of daily life. In the *Laws*⁵¹ it is maintained that the best constitution is made up of democracy and tyranny, which are either not constitutions at all, or are the worst of all. But they are nearer the truth who combine many forms; for the constitution is better which
 5 is made up of more numerous elements. The constitution proposed in the *Laws* has no element of monarchy at all; it is nothing but oligarchy and democracy, leaning rather to oligarchy. This is seen in the mode of appointing magistrates;⁵² for although the appointment of them by lot from among those who have been already selected

⁴⁹ *Laws*, v. 745 c, but Cp. infra, vii. 1330^a 9-18.

⁵⁰ Cp. iv. 1293^b 16, 1294^b 18-34.

⁵¹ iii. 693 d, 701 e, iv. 710, vi. 756 e. ⁵² *Laws*, vi. 756, 763 e, 765.

combines both elements, the way in which the rich are 10 compelled by law to attend the assembly⁵³ and vote for magistrates or discharge other political duties, while the rest may do as they like, and the endeavour⁵⁴ to have the greater number of the magistrates appointed out of the richer classes and the highest officers selected from those who have the greatest incomes, both these are oligarchical features. The oligarchical principle prevails also in the choice of the council,⁵⁵ for all are compelled 15 to choose, but the compulsion extends only to the choice out of the first class, and of an equal number out of the second class and out of the third class, but not in this latter case to all the voters but to those of the first three classes; and the selection of candidates out of the fourth class is only compulsory on the first and second. Then, from the persons so chosen, he says that there ought to be an equal number of each class selected. Thus a pre- 20 ponderance will be given to the better sort of people, who have the larger incomes, because many of the lower classes, not being compelled, will not vote. These considerations, and others which will be adduced⁵⁶ when the 21 time comes for examining similar polities, tend to show that states like Plato's should not be composed of democracy and monarchy. There is also a danger in electing the magistrates out of a body who are themselves elected; ⁵⁷ for, if but a small number choose to combine, the elections will always go as they desire. Such is the constitu- 30 tion which is described in the *Laws*.

7 Other constitutions have been proposed; some by private persons, others by philosophers and statesmen,

⁵³ *Laws*, vi. 764 A; and *Pol.* iv. 1294^a 37, 1298^b 16.

⁵⁴ *Laws*, vi. 763 D E.

⁵⁶ iv. 7-9, 12. 1296^b 34-38, 1297^a 7-13.

⁵⁵ *Laws*, vi. 756 B-E.

⁵⁷ *Laws*, vi. 753 D

which all come nearer to established or existing ones than either of Plato's. No one else has introduced such novel-
 35 ties as the community of women and children, or public tables for women: other legislators begin with what is necessary. In the opinion of some, the regulation of property is the chief point of all, that being the question upon which all revolutions turn. This danger was recognized by Phaleas of Chalcedon, who was the first to affirm that the citizens of a state ought to have equal possessions.
 40 He thought that in a new colony the equalization might
 1266^b be accomplished without difficulty, not so easily when a state was already established; and that then the shortest way of compassing the desired end would be for the rich to give and not to receive marriage portions, and for the poor not to give but to receive them.

5 Plato in the *Laws* ⁵⁸ was of opinion that, to a certain extent, accumulation should be allowed, forbidding, as I have already observed,⁵⁹ any citizen to possess more than five times the minimum qualification. But those who make such laws should remember what they are apt to forget ⁶⁰—that the legislator who fixes the amount of
 10 property should also fix the number of children; for, if the children are too many for the property, the law must be broken. And, besides the violation of the law, it is a bad thing that many from being rich should become poor; for men of ruined fortunes are sure to stir up revolutions. That the equalization of property exercises an
 15 influence on political society was clearly understood even by some of the old legislators. Laws were made by Solon and others prohibiting an individual from possessing as much land as he pleased; and there are other laws in states which forbid the sale of property: among the
 20 Locrians, for example, there is a law that a man is not

⁵⁸ v. 744 E.⁵⁹ 1265^b 21.⁶⁰ Cp. 1265^a 38-b 16.

to sell his property unless he can prove unmistakably that some misfortune has befallen him. Again, there have been laws which enjoin the preservation of the original lots. Such a law existed in the island of Leucas, and the abrogation of it made the constitution too democratic, for the rulers no longer had the prescribed qualification. Again, where there is equality of property, the amount may be either too large or too small, and the possessor 25 may be living either in luxury or penury. Clearly, then, the legislator ought not only to aim at the equalization of properties, but at moderation in their amount. Further, if he prescribe this moderate amount equally to all, he will be no nearer the mark; for it is not the possessions but the desires of mankind which require to be equalized,⁶¹ and this is impossible, unless a sufficient educa- 30 tion is provided by the laws. But Phaleas will probably reply that this is precisely what he means; and that, in his opinion, there ought to be in states, not only equal property, but equal education. Still he should tell precisely what he means; and that, in his opinion, there ought to be in having one and the same for all, if it is of 35 a sort that predisposes men to avarice, or ambition, or both. Moreover, civil troubles arise, not only out of the inequality of property, but out of the inequality of honour, though in opposite ways. For the common people 40 quarrel about the inequality of property, the higher class 1267^a about the equality of honour; as the poet says—

‘The bad and good alike in honour share.’⁶²

There are crimes of which the motive is want; and for these Phaleas expects to find a cure in the equalization of property, which will take away from a man the temptation to be a highwayman, because he is hungry or cold.

⁶¹ Cp. 1263^b 22.

⁶² *Il.* ix. 319.

5 But want is not the sole incentive to crime; men also wish to enjoy themselves and not to be in a state of desire—they wish to cure some desire, going beyond the necessities of life, which preys upon them; nay, this is not the only reason—they may desire superfluities in order to enjoy pleasures unaccompanied with pain, and therefore they commit crimes.

Now what is the cure of these three disorders? Of the first, moderate possessions and occupation; of the second, habits of temperance; as to the third, if any desire pleasures which depend on themselves, they will find the satisfaction of their desires nowhere but in philosophy; for all other pleasures we are dependent on others. The fact is that the greatest crimes are caused by excess and not by necessity. Men do not become tyrants in order that they may not suffer cold; and hence great is the honour bestowed, not on him who kills a thief, but on him who kills a tyrant. Thus we see that the institutions of Phaleas avail only against petty crimes.

There is another objection to them. They are chiefly designed to promote the internal welfare of the state. But the legislator should consider also its relation to neighbouring nations, and to all who are outside of it.⁶³

30 The government must be organized with a view to military strength; and of this he has said not a word. And so with respect to property: there should not only be enough to supply the internal wants of the state, but also to meet dangers coming from without. The property of the state should not be so large that more powerful neighbours

25 may be tempted by it, while the owners are unable to repel the invaders; nor yet so small that the state is unable to maintain a war even against states of equal power, and of the same character. Phaleas has not laid down any

⁶³ Cp. 1265^a 20.

rule; but we should bear in mind that abundance of wealth is an advantage. The best limit will probably be, that a more powerful neighbour must have no inducement to go to war with you by reason of the excess of 30 your wealth, but only such as he would have had if you had possessed less. There is a story that Eubulus, when Autophradates was going to besiege Atarneus, told him to consider how long the operation would take, and then reckon up the cost which would be incurred in the time. 'For', said he, 'I am willing for a smaller sum than that to leave Atarneus at once'. These words of Eubulus 35 made an impression on Autophradates, and he desisted from the siege.

The equalization of property is one of the things that tend to prevent the citizens from quarrelling. Not that the gain in this direction is very great. For the nobles will be dissatisfied because they think themselves worthy of more than an equal share of honours; and this is often 40 found to be a cause of sedition and revolution.⁶⁴ And the avarice of mankind is insatiable; at one time two obols 1267^b was pay enough; but now, when this sum has become customary, men always want more and more without end; for it is of the nature of desire not to be satisfied, and most men live only for the gratification of it. The 5 beginning of reform is not so much to equalize property as to train the nobler sort of natures not to desire more, and to prevent the lower from getting more; that is to say, they must be kept down, but not ill-treated. Besides, the equalization proposed by Phaleas is imperfect; for 10 he only equalizes land, whereas a man may be rich also in slaves, and cattle, and money, and in the abundance of what are called his movables. Now either all these things must be equalized, or some limit must be imposed

⁶⁴ Cp. I. 1.

- on them, or they must all be let alone. It would appear
15 that Phaleas is legislating for a small city only, if, as he
supposes, all the artisans are to be public slaves and not
to form a supplementary part of the body of citizens. But
if there is a law that artisans are to be public slaves, it
should only apply to those engaged on public works, as at
Epidamnus, or at Athens on the plan which Diophantus
once introduced.
- 20 From these observations any one may judge how far
Phaleas was wrong or right in his ideas.

- 8 Hippodamus, the son of Euryphon, a native of Mile-
tus, the same who invented the art of planning cities, and
who also laid out the Piraeus—a strange man, whose
fondness for distinction led him into a general eccen-
35 tricity of life, which made some think him affected (for
he would wear flowing hair and expensive ornaments;
but these were worn on a cheap but warm garment both
in winter and summer); he, besides aspiring to be an
adept in the knowledge of nature, was the first person
not a statesman who made inquiries about the best form
of government.
- 30 The city of Hippodamus was composed of 10,000 citi-
zens divided into three parts—one of artisans, one of
husbandmen, and a third of armed defenders of the state.
He also divided the land into three parts, one sacred, one
public, the third private:—the first was set apart to
maintain the customary worship of the gods, the second
was to support the warriors, the third was the property
35 of the husbandmen. He also divided laws into three
classes, and no more, for he maintained that there are
three subjects of lawsuits—insult, injury, and homicide.
He likewise instituted a single final court of appeal, to
40 which all causes seeming to have been improperly de-

cided might be referred; this court he formed of elders chosen for the purpose. He was further of opinion that the decisions of the courts ought not to be given by the use of a voting pebble, but that every one should have a tablet on which he might not only write a simple condemnation, or leave the tablet blank for a simple acquittal; but, if he partly acquitted and partly condemned, he was to distinguish accordingly. To the existing law he objected that it obliged the judges to be guilty of perjury, whichever way they voted. He also enacted that those who discovered anything for the good of the state should be honoured; and he provided that the children of citizens who died in battle should be maintained at the public expense, as if such an enactment had never been heard of before, yet it actually exists at Athens and in other places. As to the magistrates, he would have them all elected by the people, that is, by the three classes already mentioned, and those who were elected were to watch over the interests of the public, of strangers, and of orphans. These are the most striking points in the constitution of Hippodamus. There is not much else. 15

The first of these proposals to which objection may be taken is the threefold division of the citizens. The artisans, and the husbandmen, and the warriors, all have a share in the government. But the husbandmen have no arms, and the artisans neither arms nor land, and therefore they become all but slaves of the warrior class. That they should share in all the offices is an impossibility; for generals and guardians of the citizens, and nearly all the principal magistrates, must be taken from the class of those who carry arms. Yet, if the two other classes have no share in the government, how can they be loyal citizens? It may be said that those who have arms must necessarily be masters of both the other classes, but this 25

is not so easily accomplished unless they are numerous; and if they are, why should the other classes share in the government at all, or have power to appoint magistrates?

30 Further, what use are farmers to the city? Artisans there must be, for these are wanted in every city, and they can live by their craft, as elsewhere; and the husbandmen, too, if they really provided the warriors with food, might fairly have a share in the government. But in the republic of Hippodamus they are supposed to have land of their
35 own, which they cultivate for their private benefit. Again, as to this common land out of which the soldiers are maintained, if they are themselves to be the cultivators of it, the warrior class will be identical with the husbandmen, although the legislator intended to make a distinction between them. If, again, there are to be other cultivators distinct both from the husbandmen, who have land of their own, and from the warriors, they will make a fourth class, which has no place in the state and no
40 share in anything. Or, if the same persons are to cultivate their own lands, and those of the public as well, they will have a difficulty in supplying the quantity of produce
1268^b which will maintain two households: and why, in this case, should there be any division, for they might find food themselves and give to the warriors from the same land and the same lots? There is surely a great confusion in all this.

5 Neither is the law to be commended which says that the judges, when a simple issue is laid before them, should distinguish in their judgement; for the judge is thus converted into an arbitrator. Now, in an arbitration, although the arbitrators are many, they confer with one another about the decision, and therefore they can dis-
10 tinguish; but in courts of law this is impossible, and, indeed, most legislators take pains to prevent the judges

from holding any communication with one another. Again, will there not be confusion if the judge thinks that damages should be given, but not so much as the suitor demands? He asks, say, for twenty minae, and the judge allows him ten minae (or in general the suitor asks for more and the judge allows less), while another judge allows five, another four minae. In this way they will go 15 on splitting up the damages, and some will grant the whole and others nothing: how is the final reckoning to be taken? Again, no one contends that he who votes for a simple acquittal or condemnation perjures himself, if the indictment has been laid in an unqualified form; and this is just, for the judge who acquits does not decide 20 that the defendant owes nothing, but that he does not owe the twenty minae. He only is guilty of perjury who thinks that the defendant ought not to pay twenty minae, and yet condemns him.

To honour those who discover anything which is useful to the state is a proposal which has a specious sound, but cannot safely be enacted by law, for it may encourage informers, and perhaps even lead to political commotions. This question involves another. It has been 25 doubted whether it is or is not expedient to make any changes in the laws of a country, even if another law be better. Now, if all changes are inexpedient, we can hardly assent to the proposal of Hippodamus; for, under pretence of doing a public service, a man may introduce 30 measures which are really destructive to the laws or to the constitution. But, since we have touched upon this subject, perhaps we had better go a little into detail, for, as I was saying, there is a difference of opinion, and it may sometimes seem desirable to make changes. Such changes in the other arts and sciences have certainly been 35 beneficial; medicine, for example, and gymnastic, and

every other art and craft have departed from traditional usage. And, if politics be an art, change must be necessary in this as in any other art. That improvement has occurred is shown by the fact that old customs are exceeding-
 40 ceedingly simple and barbarous. For the ancient Hellenes went about armed and bought their brides of each other. The remains of ancient laws which have come down to
 1269^a us are quite absurd; for example, at Cumae there is a law about murder, to the effect that if the accuser produce a certain number of witnesses from among his own kinsmen, the accused shall be held guilty. Again, men in general desire the good, and not merely what their fathers had. But the primeval inhabitants, whether they
 5 were born of the earth or were the survivors of some destruction, may be supposed to have been no better than ordinary or even foolish people among ourselves (such is certainly the tradition⁶⁵ concerning the earth-born men); and it would be ridiculous to rest contented with their notions. Even when laws have been written down, they ought not always to remain unaltered. As in other
 10 sciences, so in politics, it is impossible that all things should be precisely set down in writing; for enactments must be universal, but actions are concerned with particulars.⁶⁶ Hence we infer that sometimes and in certain cases laws may be changed; but when we look at the matter from another point of view, great caution would
 15 seem to be required. For the habit of lightly changing the laws is an evil, and, when the advantage is small, some errors both of lawgivers and rulers had better be left; the citizen will not gain so much by making the change as he will lose by the habit of disobedience. The analogy of the arts⁶⁷ is false; a change in a law is a very different

⁶⁵ Cp. Plato, *Laws*, iii. 677 B; *Polit.* 274 C; *Tim.* 22 D.

⁶⁶ Cp. Plato, *Polit.* 295 A.

⁶⁷ 1268^b 34 sqq.

thing from a change in an art. For the law has no power α to command obedience except that of habit, which can only be given by time, so that a readiness to change from old to new laws enfeebles the power of the law. Even if we admit that the laws are to be changed, are they all to be changed, and in every state? And are they to be β changed by anybody who likes, or only by certain persons? These are very important questions; and therefore we had better reserve the discussion of them to a more suitable occasion. ⁶⁸

9 In the governments of Lacedaemon and Crete, and indeed in all governments, two points have to be consid- γ ered: first, whether any particular law is good or bad, when compared with the perfect state; secondly, whether it is or is not consistent with the idea and character which the lawgiver has set before his citizens. That in a well-ordered state the citizens should have leisure and not have to provide for their daily wants is generally ac- δ knowledged, but there is a difficulty in seeing how this leisure is to be attained. The Thessalian Penestae have often risen against their masters, and the Helots in like manner against the Lacedaemonians, for whose misfortunes they are always lying in wait. Nothing, however, of this kind has as yet happened to the Cretans; the reason probably is that the neighbouring cities, even when ϵ at war with one another, never form an alliance with ζ rebellious serfs, rebellions not being for their interest, since they themselves have a dependent population. ⁶⁹ Whereas all the neighbours of the Lacedaemonians, whether Argives, Messenians, or Arcadians, were their enemies. In Thessaly, again, the original revolt of the η θ

⁶⁸ These questions are not actually discussed in the *Politics*.

⁶⁹ Cp. 1271^b 41.

slaves occurred because the Thessalians were still at war with the neighbouring Achaeans, Perrhaebians and Magnesians. Besides, if there were no other difficulty, the treatment or management of slaves is a troublesome affair; for, if not kept in hand, they are insolent, and think
10 that they are as good as their masters, and, if harshly treated, they hate and conspire against them. Now it is clear that when these are the results the citizens of a state have not found out the secret of managing their subject population.

Again, the licence of the Lacedaemonian women defeats the intention of the Spartan constitution, and is
15 adverse to the happiness of the state. For, a husband and a wife being each a part of every family, the state may be considered as about equally divided into men and women; and, therefore, in those states in which the condition of the women is bad, half the city⁷⁰ may be regarded as having no laws. And this is what has actually happened at Sparta; the legislator wanted to make the
20 whole state hardy and temperate, and he has carried out his intention in the case of the men, but he has neglected the women, who live in every sort of intemperance and luxury. The consequence is that in such a state wealth is too highly valued, especially if the citizens fall under
25 the dominion of their wives, after the manner of most warlike races, except the Celts and a few others who openly approve of male loves. The old mythologer would seem to have been right in uniting Ares and Aphrodite, for all warlike races are prone to the love either of men
30 or of women. This was exemplified among the Spartans in the days of their greatness; many things were managed by their women. But what difference does it make whether women rule, or the rulers are ruled by women?

⁷⁰ Cp. i. 1260^b 18.

The result is the same. Even in regard to courage, which is of no use in daily life, and is needed only in war, the ³³ influence of the Lacedaemonian women has been most mischievous. The evil showed itself in the Theban invasion, when, unlike the women in other cities, they were utterly useless and caused more confusion than the enemy. This licence of the Lacedaemonian women existed from the earliest times, and was only what might be ⁴⁰ expected. For, during the wars of the Lacedaemonians, ¹²⁷⁰ first against the Argives, and afterwards against the Arcadians and Messenians, the men were long away from home, and, on the return of peace, they gave themselves into the legislator's hand, already prepared by the dis- ⁵ cipline of a soldier's life (in which there are many elements of virtue), to receive his enactments. But, when Lycurgus, as tradition says, wanted to bring the women under his laws, they resisted, and he gave up the attempt. These then are the causes of what then happened, and this defect in the constitution is clearly to be attributed to them. We are not, however, considering what is or is ¹⁰ not to be excused, but what is right or wrong, and the disorder of the women, as I have already said,⁷¹ not only gives an air of indecorum to the constitution considered in itself, but tends in a measure to foster avarice.

The mention of avarice naturally suggests a criticism ¹⁵ on the inequality of property. While some of the Spartan citizens have quite small properties, others have very large ones; hence the land has passed into the hands of a few. And this is due also to faulty laws; for, although the legislator rightly holds up to shame the sale or purchase ²⁰ of an inheritance, he allows anybody who likes to give or bequeath it. Yet both practices lead to the same result. And nearly two-fifths of the whole country are held

⁷¹ 1269^b 12, 23.

by women; this is owing to the number of heiresses and
25 to the large dowries which are customary. It would surely
have been better to have given no dowries at all, or, if
any, but small or moderate ones. As the law now stands,
a man may bestow his heiress on any one whom he
pleases, and, if he die intestate, the privilege of giving
her away descends to his heir.⁷² Hence, although the
30 country is able to maintain 1500 cavalry and 30,000 hop-
lites, the whole number of Spartan citizens⁷³ fell below
1000. The result proves the faulty nature of their laws
respecting property; for the city sank under a single de-
feat; the want of men was their ruin. There is a tradition
that, in the days of their ancient kings, they were in the
35 habit of giving the rights of citizenship to strangers, and
therefore, in spite of their long wars, no lack of popula-
tion was experienced by them; indeed, at one time Sparta
is said to have numbered not less than 10,000 citizens.
Whether this statement is true or not, it would certainly
have been better to have maintained their numbers by
the equalization of property. Again, the law which relates
40 to the procreation of children is adverse to the correction
1270^b of this inequality. For the legislator, wanting to have as
many Spartans as he could, encouraged the citizens to
have large families; and there is a law at Sparta that the
father of three sons shall be exempt from military serv-
ice, and he who has four from all the burdens of the state.
5 Yet it is obvious that, if there were many children, the
land being distributed as it is, many of them must neces-
sarily fall into poverty.

The Lacedaemonian constitution is defective in an-
other point; I mean the Ephoralty. This magistracy has
authority in the highest matters, but the Ephors are

⁷² i. e. to the person who 'inherits' the heiress.

⁷³ At the time of the Theban invasion.

chosen from the whole people, and so the office is apt to fall into the hands of very poor men, who, being badly off, are open to bribes. There have been many examples at Sparta of this evil in former times; and quite recently, in the matter of the Andrians, certain of the Ephors who were bribed did their best to ruin the state. And so great and tyrannical is their power, that even the kings have been compelled to court them, so that, in this way as well, together with the royal office, the whole constitution has deteriorated, and from being an aristocracy has turned into a democracy. The Ephoralty certainly does keep the state together; for the people are contented when they have a share in the highest office, and the result, whether due to the legislator or to chance, has been advantageous. For if a constitution is to be permanent, all the parts of the state must wish that it should exist and the same arrangements be maintained. This is the case at Sparta, where the kings desire its permanence because they have due honour in their own persons; the nobles because they are represented in the council of elders (for the office of elder is a reward of virtue); and the people, because all are eligible to the Ephoralty. The election of Ephors out of the whole people is perfectly right, but ought not to be carried on in the present fashion, which is too childish. Again, they have the decision of great causes, although they are quite ordinary men, and therefore they should not determine them merely on their own judgement, but according to written rules, and to the laws. Their way of life, too, is not in accordance with the spirit of the constitution—they have a deal too much licence; whereas, in the case of the other citizens, the excess of strictness is so intolerable that they run away from the law into the secret indulgence of sensual pleasures.

35 Again, the council of elders is not free from defects. It may be said that the elders are good men and well trained in manly virtue; and that, therefore, there is an advantage to the state in having them. But that judges of important causes should hold office for life is a disputable thing, for the mind grows old as well as the body.
40 1271^a And when men have been educated in such a manner that even the legislator himself cannot trust them, there is real danger. Many of the elders are well known to have taken bribes and to have been guilty of partiality in public affairs. And therefore they ought not to be irresponsible; yet at Sparta they are so. But (it may be replied), 'All magistracies are accountable to the Ephors.' Yes, but this prerogative is too great for them, and we maintain that the control should be exercised in some other manner. Further, the mode in which the Spartans
5 elect their elders is childish; and it is improper that the person to be elected should canvass for the office; the worthiest should be appointed, whether he chooses or not. And here the legislator clearly indicates the same intention which appears in other parts of his constitution; he would have his citizens ambitious, and he has reckoned
10 upon this quality in the election of the elders; for no one would ask to be elected if he were not. Yet ambition and avarice, almost more than any other passions, are the motives of crime.

Whether kings are or are not an advantage to states,
20 I will consider at another time⁷⁴; they should at any rate be chosen, not as they are now, but with regard to their personal life and conduct. The legislator himself obviously did not suppose that he could make them really good men; at least he shows a great distrust of their virtue. For this reason the Spartans used to join enemies
25

⁷⁴ iii. 14-17.

with them in the same embassy, and the quarrels between the kings were held to be conservative of the state.

Neither did the first introducer of the common meals, called 'phiditia', regulate them well. The entertainment ought to have been provided at the public cost, as in Crete⁷⁵; but among the Lacedaemonians every one is expected to contribute, and some of them are too poor to afford the expense; thus the intention of the legislator is frustrated. The common meals were meant to be a popular institution, but the existing manner of regulating them is the reverse of popular. For the very poor can scarcely take part in them; and, according to ancient custom, those who cannot contribute are not allowed to retain their rights of citizenship. 35

The law about the Spartan admirals has often been censured, and with justice; it is a source of dissension, for the kings are perpetual generals, and this office of admiral is but the setting up of another king. 40

The charge which Plato brings, in the *Laws*,⁷⁶ against the intention of the legislator, is likewise justified; the whole constitution has regard to one part of virtue only—the virtue of the soldier, which gives victory in war. So long as they were at war, therefore, their power was preserved, but when they had attained empire they fell,⁷⁷ for of the arts of peace they knew nothing, and had never engaged in any employment higher than war. There is another error, equally great, into which they have fallen. Although they truly think that the goods for which men contend are to be acquired by virtue rather than by vice, they err in supposing that these goods are to be preferred to the virtue which gains them.

Once more: the revenues of the state are ill-managed; 10

⁷⁵ Cp. 1272^a 13–21.

⁷⁶ *Laws*, i. 625 E, 630.

⁷⁷ Cp. vii. 1334^a 6.

there is no money in the treasury, although they are obliged to carry on great wars, and they are unwilling to pay taxes. The greater part of the land being in the hands of the Spartans, they do not look closely into one
15 another's contributions. The result which the legislator has produced is the reverse of beneficial; for he has made his city poor, and his citizens greedy.

Enough respecting the Spartan constitution, of which these are the principal defects.

- 20 10 The Cretan constitution nearly resembles the Spartan, and in some few points is quite as good; but for the most part less perfect in form. The older constitutions are generally less elaborate than the later, and the Lacedaemonian is said to be, and probably is, in a very great measure, a copy of the Cretan. According to tradition,
25 Lycurgus, when he ceased to be the guardian of King Charillus, went abroad and spent most of his time in Crete. For the two countries are nearly connected; the Lycians are a colony of the Lacedaemonians, and the colonists, when they came to Crete, adopted the constitution which they found existing among the inhabitants.
30 Even to this day the Perioeci, or subject population of Crete, are governed by the original laws which Minos is supposed to have enacted. The island seems to be intended by nature for dominion in Hellas, and to be well situated; it extends right across the sea, around which nearly all the Hellenes are settled; and while one end is
35 not far from the Peloponnese, the other almost reaches to the region of Asia about Triopium and Rhodes. Hence Minos acquired the empire of the sea, subduing some of the islands and colonizing others; at last he invaded Sicily, where he died near Camicus.

The Cretan institutions resemble the Lacedaemonian.

The Helots are the husbandmen of the one, the Perioeci 40 of the other, and both Cretans and Lacedaemonians have common meals, which were anciently called by the Lacedaemonians not 'phiditia' but 'andria'; and the Cretans have the same word, the use of which proves that the common meals originally came from Crete. Further, the two constitutions are similar; for the office of the Ephors 5 is the same as that of the Cretan Cosmi, the only difference being that whereas the Ephors are five, the Cosmi are ten in number. The elders, too, answer to the elders in Crete, who are termed by the Cretans the council. And the kingly office once existed in Crete, but was abolished, and the Cosmi have now the duty of leading them in war. All classes share in the ecclesia, but it can only 10 ratify the decrees of the elders and the Cosmi.

The common meals of Crete are certainly better managed than the Lacedaemonian; for in Lacedaemon every one pays so much per head, or, if he fails, the law, as I 15 have already explained,⁷⁸ forbids him to exercise the rights of citizenship. But in Crete they are of a more popular character. There, of all the fruits of the earth and cattle raised on the public lands, and of the tribute which is paid by the Perioeci, one portion is assigned to the gods and to the service of the state, and another to the common meals, so that men, women, and children are 20 all supported out of a common stock.⁷⁹ The legislator has many ingenious ways of securing moderation in eating, which he conceives to be a gain; he likewise encourages the separation of men from women, lest they should have too many children, and the companionship of men with one another—whether this is a good or bad thing I shall 25 have an opportunity of considering at another time.⁸⁰

⁷⁸ 1271^a 35.

⁷⁹ Cp. vii. 1330^a 5.

⁸⁰ The question is nowhere discussed by Aristotle.

But that the Cretan common meals are better ordered than the Lacedaemonian there can be no doubt.

On the other hand, the Cosmi are even a worse institution than the Ephors, of which they have all the evils
 30 without the good. Like the Ephors, they are any chance persons, but in Crete this is not counterbalanced by a corresponding political advantage. At Sparta every one is eligible, and the body of the people, having a share in the highest office, want the constitution to be permanent.⁸¹ But in Crete the Cosmi are elected out of certain families, and not out of the whole people, and the elders out of those who have been Cosmi.

35 The same criticism may be made about the Cretan, which has been already made about the Lacedaemonian elders.⁸² Their irresponsibility and life tenure is too great a privilege, and their arbitrary power of acting upon their own judgement, and dispensing with written law, is dangerous. It is no proof of the goodness of the institution
 40 that the people are not discontented at being excluded from it. For there is no profit to be made out of the office
 1272^b as out of the Ephoralty, since, unlike the Ephors, the Cosmi, being in an island, are removed from temptation.

The remedy by which they correct the evil of this institution is an extraordinary one, suited rather to a close oligarchy than to a constitutional state. For the Cosmi are often expelled by a conspiracy of their own colleagues, or of private individuals; and they are allowed also to resign before their term of office has expired. Surely all matters of this kind are better regulated by
 5 law than by the will of man, which is a very unsafe rule. Worst of all is the suspension of the office of Cosmi, a device to which the nobles often have recourse when they will not submit to justice. This shows that the Cretan

⁸¹ Cp. *supra*, 1270^b 25.

⁸² 1270^b 35-1271^a 18.

government, although possessing some of the characteristics of a constitutional state, is really a close oligarchy.

The nobles have a habit, too, of setting up a chief; they get together a party among the common people and their own friends and then quarrel and fight with one another. What is this but the temporary destruction of the state and dissolution of society? A city is in a dangerous condition when those who are willing are also able to attack her. But, as I have already said,⁸³ the island of Crete is saved by her situation; distance has the same effect as the Lacedaemonian prohibition of strangers; and the Cretans have no foreign dominions. This is the reason why the Perioeci are contented in Crete, whereas the Helots are perpetually revolting. But when lately foreign invaders found their way into the island, the weakness of the Cretan constitution was revealed. Enough of the government of Crete.

11 The Carthaginians are also considered to have an excellent form of government, which differs from that of any other state in several respects, though it is in some very like the Lacedaemonian. Indeed, all three states—the Lacedaemonian, the Cretan, and the Carthaginian—nearly resemble one another, and are very different from any others. Many of the Carthaginian institutions are excellent. The superiority of their constitution is proved by the fact that the common people remain loyal to the constitution; the Carthaginians have never had any rebellion worth speaking of, and have never been under the rule of a tyrant.

Among the points in which the Carthaginian constitution resembles the Lacedaemonian are the following:—The common tables of the clubs answer to the Spartan

35 phiditia, and their magistracy of the 104 to the Ephors; but, whereas the Ephors are any chance persons, the magistrates of the Carthaginians are elected according to merit—this is an improvement. They have also their kings and their gerusia, or council of elders, who correspond to the kings and elders of Sparta. Their kings, unlike the Spartan, are not always of the same family, nor
40 that an ordinary one, but if there is some distinguished family they are selected out of it and not appointed by
1273^a seniority—this is far better. Such officers have great power, and therefore, if they are persons of little worth, do a great deal of harm, and they have already done harm at Lacedaemon.

Most of the defects or deviations from the perfect state, for which the Carthaginian constitution would be censured, apply equally to all the forms of government which we have mentioned. But of the deflections from
5 aristocracy and constitutional government, some incline more to democracy and some to oligarchy. The kings and elders, if unanimous, may determine whether they will or will not bring a matter before the people, but when they are not unanimous, the people decide on such matters as well. And whatever the kings and elders bring
10 before the people is not only heard but also determined by them, and any one who likes may oppose it; now this is not permitted in Sparta and Crete. That the magistracies of five who have under them many important matters should be co-opted, that they should choose the
15 supreme council of 100, and should hold office longer than other magistrates (for they are virtually rulers both before and after they hold office)—these are oligarchical features; their being without salary and not elected by lot, and any similar points, such as the practice of

having all suits tried by the magistrates,⁸⁴ and not some 20
by one class of judges or jurors and some by another, as
at Lacedaemon, are characteristic of aristocracy. The
Carthaginian constitution deviates from aristocracy and
inclines to oligarchy, chiefly on a point where popular
opinion is on their side. For men in general think that
magistrates should be chosen not only for their merit,
but for their wealth: a man, they say, who is poor cannot
rule well—he has not the leisure. If, then, election of
magistrates for their wealth be characteristic of oli- 25
garchy, and election for merit of aristocracy, there will
be a third form under which the constitution of Carthage
is comprehended; for the Carthaginians choose their
magistrates, and particularly the highest of them—their
kings and generals—with an eye both to merit and to 30
wealth.

But we must acknowledge that, in thus deviating from
aristocracy, the legislator has committed an error. Noth-
ing is more absolutely necessary than to provide that the
highest class, not only when in office, but when out of of-
fice, should have leisure and not disgrace themselves in
any way; and to this his attention should be first directed.
Even if you must have regard to wealth, in order to se- 35
cure leisure, yet it is surely a bad thing that the greatest
offices, such as those of kings and generals, should be
bought. The law which allows this abuse makes wealth
of more account than virtue, and the whole state becomes
avaricious. For, whenever the chiefs of the state deem
anything honourable, the other citizens are sure to fol- 40
low their example; and, where virtue has not the first 1273^b
place, their aristocracy cannot be firmly established.
Those who have been at the expense of purchasing their
places will be in the habit of repaying themselves; and

⁸⁴ Cp. iii. 1275^b 8–12.

it is absurd to suppose that a poor and honest man will be wanting to make gains, and that a lower stamp of man who has incurred a great expense will not. Wherefore
 5 they should rule who are able to rule best. And even if the legislator does not care to protect the good from poverty, he should at any rate secure leisure for them when in office.⁸⁵

It would seem also to be a bad principle that the same person should hold many offices, which is a favourite practice among the Carthaginians, for one business is
 10 better done by one man.⁸⁶ The legislator should see to this and should not appoint the same person to be a flute-player and a shoemaker. Hence, where the state is large, it is more in accordance both with constitutional and with democratic principles that the offices of state should be distributed among many persons. For, as I said,⁸⁷ this arrangement is fairer to all, and any action familiarized
 15 by repetition is better and sooner performed. We have a proof in military and naval matters; the duties of command and of obedience in both these services extend to all.

The government of the Carthaginians is oligarchical, but they successfully escape the evils of oligarchy by enriching one portion of the people after another by sending them to their colonies. This is their panacea and the
 20 means by which they give stability to the state. Accident favours them, but the legislator should be able to provide against revolution without trusting to accidents. As things are, if any misfortune occurred, and the bulk of the subjects revolted, there would be no way of restoring peace by legal methods.

25 Such is the character of the Lacedaemonian, Cretan,

⁸⁵ Cp. 1269^a 34.

⁸⁶ Cp. Plato, *Rep.* ii. 374 A.

⁸⁷ 1261^b 1.

and Carthaginian constitutions, which are justly celebrated.

12 Of those who have treated of governments, some have never taken any part at all in public affairs, but have passed their lives in a private station; about most of them, what was worth telling has been already told.⁸⁸ Others have been lawgivers, either in their own or in 30 foreign cities, whose affairs they have administered; and of these some have only made laws, others have framed constitutions; for example, Lycurgus and Solon did both. Of the Lacedaemonian constitution I have already spoken.⁸⁹ As to Solon, he is thought by some to have been 33 a good legislator, who put an end to the exclusiveness of the oligarchy, emancipated the people, established the ancient Athenian democracy, and harmonized the different elements of the state. According to their view, the council of Areopagus was an oligarchical element, the elected magistracy, aristocratical, and the courts of law, 40 democratical. The truth seems to be that the council and 1274^a the elected magistracy existed before the time of Solon, and were retained by him, but that he formed the courts of law out of all the citizens, thus creating the democracy, which is the very reason why he is sometimes blamed. For in giving the supreme power to the law courts, which are elected by lot, he is thought to have destroyed the 5 non-democratic element. When the law courts grew powerful, to please the people who were now playing the tyrant the old constitution was changed into the existing democracy. Ephialtes and Pericles curtailed the power of the Areopagus; Pericles also instituted the payment of the juries, and thus every demagogue in turn increased 10 the power of the democracy until it became what we now

⁸⁸ cc. 1-8.

⁸⁹ c. 9.

see. All this is true; it seems, however, to be the result of circumstances, and not to have been intended by Solon. For the people, having been instrumental in gaining the empire of the sea in the Persian War,⁹⁰ began to get a notion of itself, and followed worthless demagogues, whom the better class opposed. Solon, himself, appears to
 15 have given the Athenians only that power of electing to offices and calling to account the magistrates which was absolutely necessary; ⁹¹ for without it they would have been in a state of slavery and enmity to the government. All the magistrates he appointed from the notables and the men of wealth, that is to say, from the pentacosio-
 20 medimni, or from the class called zeugitae, or from a third class of so-called knights or cavalry. The fourth class were labourers who had no share in any magistracy.

Mere legislators were Zaleucus, who gave laws to the Epizephyrian Locrians, and Charondas, who legislated for his own city of Catana, and for the other Chalcidian
 25 cities in Italy and Sicily. Some people attempt to make out that Onomacritus was the first person who had any special skill in legislation, and that he, although a Locrian by birth, was trained in Crete, where he lived in the exercise of his prophetic art; that Thales was his companion, and that Lycurgus and Zaleucus were disciples
 30 of Thales, as Charondas was of Zaleucus. But their account is quite inconsistent with chronology.

There was also Philolaus, the Corinthian, who gave laws to the Thebans. This Philolaus was one of the family of the Bacchiadae, and a lover of Diocles, the Olympic victor, who left Corinth in horror of the incestuous passion which his mother Halcyone had conceived for him,
 35 and retired to Thebes, where the two friends together ended their days. The inhabitants still point out their

⁹⁰ Cp. v. 1304^a 20, viii. 1341^a 29.

⁹¹ Cp. iii. 1281^b 32.

tombs, which are in full view of one another, but one is visible from the Corinthian territory, the other not. Tradition says the two friends arranged them thus, Diocles out of horror at his misfortunes, so that the land of 40 Corinth might not be visible from his tomb; Philolaus 1274^b that it might. This is the reason why they settled at Thebes, and so Philolaus legislated for the Thebans, and, besides some other enactments, gave them laws about the procreation of children, which they call the 'Laws of Adoption'. These laws were peculiar to him, and were intended to preserve the number of the lots.

In the legislation of Charondas there is nothing re- 5 markable, except the suits against false witnesses. He is the first who instituted denunciation for perjury. His laws are more exact and more precisely expressed than even those of our modern legislators.

(Characteristic of Phaleas is the equalization of property; of Plato, the community of women, children, and 10 property, the common meals of women, and the law about drinking, that the sober shall be masters of the feast;⁹² also the training of soldiers to acquire by practice equal skill with both hands, so that one should be as useful as the other.)⁹³

Draco has left laws, but he adapted them to a constitu- 15 tion which already existed, and there is no peculiarity in them which is worth mentioning, except the greatness and severity of the punishments.

Pittacus, too, was only a lawgiver, and not the author of a constitution; he has a law which is peculiar to him, that, if a drunken man do something wrong, he shall be 20 more heavily punished than if he were sober; ⁹⁴ he looked not to the excuse which might be offered for the drunkard,

⁹² Cp. *Laws*, i. 640 D, ii. 671 D-672 A.

⁹³ Cp. *Laws*, vii. 794 D.

⁹⁴ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* III 3^b 31.

but only to expediency, for drunken more often than sober people commit acts of violence.

Androdamas of Rhegium gave laws to the Chalcidians
25 of Thrace. Some of them relate to homicide, and to heir-
esses; but there is nothing remarkable in them.

And here let us conclude our inquiry into the various constitutions which either actually exist, or have been devised by theorists.

BOOK III

1 He who would inquire into the essence and attributes of various kinds of governments must first of all determine 'What is a state?' At present this is a disputed question. Some say that the state has done a certain act; others, no, not the state,¹ but the oligarchy or the tyrant. 35 And the legislator or statesman is concerned entirely with the state; a constitution or government being an arrangement of the inhabitants of a state. But a state is composite, like any other whole made up of many parts; —these are the citizens, who compose it. It is evident, 40 therefore, that we must begin by asking, Who is the citizen, and what is the meaning of the term? For here again there may be a difference of opinion. He who is a citizen in a democracy will often not be a citizen in an oligarchy. 5 Leaving out of consideration those who have been made citizens, or who have obtained the name of citizen in any other accidental manner, we may say, first, that a citizen is not a citizen because he lives in a certain place, for resident aliens and slaves share in the place; nor is he a citizen who has no legal right except that of suing and being sued; for this right may be enjoyed under the pro- 10 visions of a treaty. Nay, resident aliens in many places do not possess even such rights completely, for they are

¹ Cp. 1276^a 8.

obliged to have a patron, so that they do but imperfectly participate in citizenship, and we call them citizens only in a qualified sense, as we might apply the term to children who are too young to be on the register, or to old men who have been relieved from state duties. Of these we do not say quite simply that they are citizens, but add in the one case that they are not of age, and in the other, that they are past the age, or something of that sort; the precise expression is immaterial, for our meaning is clear. Similar difficulties to those which I have mentioned may be raised and answered about deprived citizens and about exiles. But the citizen whom we are seeking to define is a citizen in the strictest sense, against whom no such exception can be taken, and his special characteristic is that he shares in the administration of justice, and in offices. Now of offices some are discontinuous, and the same persons are not allowed to hold them twice, or can only hold them after a fixed interval; others have no limit of time—for example, the office of dicast or ecclesiast.² It may, indeed, be argued that these are not magistrates at all, and that their functions give them no share in the government. But surely it is ridiculous to say that those who have the supreme power do not govern. Let us not dwell further upon this, which is a purely verbal question; what we want is a common term including both dicast and ecclesiast. Let us, for the sake of distinction, call it 'indefinite office', and we will assume that those who share in such office are citizens. This is the most comprehensive definition of a citizen, and best suits all those who are generally so called.

But we must not forget that things of which the underlying principles differ in kind, one of them being first,

² 'Dicast' = juryman and judge in one: 'ecclesiast' = member of the ecclesia or assembly of the citizens.

another second, another third, have, when regarded in this relation, nothing, or hardly anything, worth mentioning in common. Now we see that governments differ in kind, and that some of them are prior and that others are posterior; those which are faulty or perverted are necessarily posterior to those which are perfect. (What we mean by perversion will be hereafter explained.³) The citizen then of necessity differs under each form of government; and our definition is best adapted to the citizen of a democracy; but not necessarily to other states. For in some states the people are not acknowledged, nor have they any regular assembly, but only extraordinary ones; and suits are distributed by sections among the magistrates. At Lacedaemon, for instance, the Ephors determine suits about contracts, which they distribute among themselves, while the elders are judges of homicide, and other causes are decided by other magistrates. A similar principle prevails at Carthage;⁴ there certain magistrates decide all causes. We may, indeed, modify our definition of the citizen so as to include these states. In them it is the holder of a definite, not of an indefinite office, who legislates and judges, and to some or all such holders of definite offices is reserved the right of deliberating or judging about some things or about all things. The conception of the citizen now begins to clear up.

He who has the power to take part in the deliberative or judicial administration of any state is said by us to be a citizen of that state; and, speaking generally, a state is a body of citizens sufficing for the purposes of life.

2 But in practice a citizen is defined to be one of whom both the parents are citizens; others insist on going further back; say to two or three or more ancestors. This is 25

³ Cp. 1279^a 19.

⁴ Cp. ii. 1273^a 19.

a short and practical definition; but there are some who raise the further question: How this third or fourth ancestor came to be a citizen? Gorgias of Leontini, partly because he was in a difficulty, partly in irony, said—‘Mortars are what is made by the mortar-makers, and the citizens of Larissa are those who are made by the magistrates;’⁵ for it is their trade to make Larissaeans.’ Yet
 30 the question is really simple, for, if according to the definition just given they shared in the government, they were citizens. This is a better definition than the other. For the words, ‘born of a father or mother who is a citizen’, cannot possibly apply to the first inhabitants or founders of a state.

There is a greater difficulty in the case of those who
 35 have been made citizens after a revolution, as by Cleisthenes at Athens after the expulsion of the tyrants, for he enrolled in tribes many metics, both strangers and slaves. The doubt in these cases is, not who is, but
 1276^a whether he who is ought to be a citizen; and there will still be a furthering the state, whether a certain act is or is not an act of the state; for what ought not to be is what is false. Now, there are some who hold office, and yet ought not to hold office, whom we describe as ruling, but ruling unjustly. And the citizen was defined⁶ by the fact of his holding some kind of rule or office—he who holds a judicial or legislative office fulfils our definition
 5 of a citizen. It is evident, therefore, that the citizens about whom the doubt has arisen must be called citizens.

3 Whether they ought to be so or not is a question which is bound up with the previous inquiry.⁷ For a par-

⁵ An untranslatable play upon the word *demiourgos*, which means either ‘a magistrate’ or ‘an artisan’.

⁶ 1275^a 22 sqq.

⁷ Cp. 1274^b 34.

allel question is raised respecting the state, whether a certain act is or is not an act of the state; for example, in the transition from an oligarchy or a tyranny to a democracy. In such cases persons refuse to fulfil their 10 contracts or any other obligations, on the ground that the tyrant, and not the state, contracted them; they argue that some constitutions are established by force, and not for the sake of the common good. But this would apply equally to democracies, for they too may be founded on violence, and then the acts of the democracy will be 15 neither more nor less acts of the state in question than those of an oligarchy or of a tyranny. This question runs up into another:—on what principle shall we ever say that the state is the same, or different? It would be a very superficial view which considered only the place and the inhabitants (for the soil and the population may be separated, and some of the inhabitants may live in one place 20 and some in another). This, however, is not a very serious difficulty; we need only remark that the word 'state' is ambiguous.⁸

It is further asked: When are men, living in the same 25 place, to be regarded as a single city—what is the limit? Certainly not the wall of the city, for you might surround all Peloponnesus with a wall. Like this, we may say, is Babylon,⁹ and every city that has the compass of a nation rather than a city; Babylon, they say, had been taken for three days before some part of the inhabitants became 30 aware of the fact. This difficulty may, however, with advantage be deferred¹⁰ to another occasion; the statesman has to consider the size of the state, and whether it should consist of more than one nation or not.

⁸ i. e. *Polis* means both 'state' and 'city'.

⁹ Cp. ii. 1265^a 14.

¹⁰ The size of the state is discussed in vii. 1326^a 8–1327^a 3; the question whether it should consist of more than one nation is barely touched upon, in v. 1303^a 25–^b 3.

35 Again, shall we say that while the race of inhabitants, as well as their place of abode, remain the same, the city is also the same, although the citizens are always dying and being born, as we call rivers and fountains the same, although the water is always flowing away and coming again? Or shall we say that the generations of men, like
 40 the rivers, are the same, but that the state changes? For, 1276^b since the state is a partnership, and is a partnership of citizens in a constitution, when the form of the government changes, and becomes different, then it may be supposed that the state is no longer the same, just as a
 5 tragic differs from a comic chorus, although the members of both may be identical. And in this manner we speak of every union or composition of elements as different when the form of their composition alters; for example, a scale containing the same sounds is said to be different,
 10 accordingly as the Dorian or the Phrygian mode is employed. And if this is true it is evident that the sameness of the state consists chiefly in the sameness of the constitution, and it may be called or not called by the same name, whether the inhabitants are the same or entirely different. It is quite another question, whether a state
 15 ought or ought not to fulfil engagements when the form of government changes.

4 There is a point nearly allied to the preceding: Whether the virtue of a good man and a good citizen is the same or not.¹¹ But, before entering on this discussion, we must certainly first obtain some general notion
 20 of the virtue of the citizen. Like the sailor, the citizen is a member of a community. Now, sailors have different functions, for one of them is a rower, another a pilot, and a third a look-out man, a fourth is described by some

¹¹ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* v. 1130^b 28.

similar term; and while the precise definition of each individual's virtue applies exclusively to him, there is, at the same time, a common definition applicable to them all. For they have all of them a common object, which is safety in navigation. Similarly, one citizen differs from another, but the salvation of the community is the common business of them all. This community is the constitution; the virtue of the citizen must therefore be relative to the constitution of which he is a member. If, then, there are many forms of government, it is evident that there is not one single virtue of the good citizen which is perfect virtue. But we say that the good man is he who has one single virtue which is perfect virtue. Hence it is evident that the good citizen need not of necessity possess the virtue which makes a good man. 35

The same question may also be approached by another road, from a consideration of the best constitution. If the state cannot be entirely composed of good men, and yet each citizen is expected to do his own business well, and must therefore have virtue, still, inasmuch as all the citizens cannot be alike, the virtue of the citizen and of the good man cannot coincide. All must have the virtue of the good citizen—thus, and thus only, can the state be perfect; but they will not have the virtue of a good man, unless we assume that in the good state all the citizens must be good. 40 1277^A

Again, the state, as composed of unlikes, may be compared to the living being: as the first elements into which a living being is resolved are soul and body, as soul is made up of rational principle and appetite, the family of husband and wife, property of master and slave, so of all these, as well as other dissimilar elements, the state is composed; and, therefore, the virtue of all the citizens cannot possibly be the same, any more than the excel- 5

lence of the leader of a chorus is the same as that of the performer who stands by his side. I have said enough to show why the two kinds of virtue cannot be absolutely and always the same.

But will there then be no case in which the virtue of
15 the good citizen and the virtue of the good man coincide? To this we answer that the good *ruler* is a good and wise man, and that he who would be a statesman must be a wise man. And some persons say that even the education of the ruler should be of a special kind; for are not the children of kings instructed in riding and military exercises? As Euripides says:

'No subtle arts for me, but what the state requires.'

As though there were a special education needed by a
20 ruler. If then the virtue of a good ruler is the same as that of a good man, and we assume further that the subject is a citizen as well as the ruler, the virtue of the good citizen and the virtue of the good man cannot be absolutely the same, although in some cases they may; for the virtue of a ruler differs from that of a citizen. It was the sense of this difference which made Jason say that 'he felt hungry when he was not a tyrant', meaning that he could not endure to live in a private station. But, on the other
25 hand, it may be argued that men are praised for knowing both how to rule and how to obey, and he is said to be a citizen of approved virtue who is able to do both. Now if we suppose the virtue of a good man to be that which rules, and the virtue of the citizen to include ruling and obeying, it cannot be said that they are equally worthy
30 of praise. Since, then, it is sometimes thought that the ruler and the ruled must learn different things and not the same, but that the citizen must know and share in them both, the inference is obvious. There is, indeed, the

rule of a master, which is concerned with menial offices¹²—the master need not know how to perform these, but may employ others in the execution of them: the other³ would be degrading; and by the other I mean the power actually to do menial duties, which vary much in character and are executed by various classes of slaves, such, for example, as handicraftsmen, who, as their name signifies, live by the labour of their hands:—under these¹²⁷⁷ the mechanic is included. Hence in ancient times, and among some nations, the working classes had no share in the government—a privilege which they only acquired under the extreme democracy. Certainly the good man and the statesman and the good citizen ought not to learn the crafts of inferiors except for their own occasional use;¹³ if they habitually practice them, there will cease⁵ to be a distinction between master and slave.

This is not the rule of which we are speaking; but there is a rule of another kind, which is exercised over freemen and equals by birth—a constitutional rule, which the ruler must learn by obeying, as he would learn¹⁰ the duties of a general of cavalry by being under the orders of a general of cavalry, or the duties of a general of infantry by being under the orders of a general of infantry, and by having had the command of a regiment and of a company. It has been well said that ‘he who has never learned to obey cannot be a good commander’. The two are not the same, but the good citizen ought to be capable of both; he should know how to govern like a freeman, and how to obey like a freeman—these are the¹⁵ virtues of a citizen. And, although the temperance and justice of a ruler are distinct from those of a subject, the virtue of a good man will include both; for the virtue of the good man who is free and also a subject, e. g. his jus-

¹² Cp. i. 1255^b 20–37.

¹³ Cp. viii. 1337^b 15.

tice, will not be one but will comprise distinct kinds, the one qualifying him to rule, the other to obey, and differing as the temperance and courage of men and women differ.¹⁴ For a man would be thought a coward if he had no more courage than a courageous woman, and a woman would be thought loquacious if she imposed no more restraint on her conversation than the good man; and indeed their part in the management of the household is different, for the duty of the one is to acquire, and of the other to preserve. Practical wisdom only is characteristic of the ruler:¹⁵ it would seem that all other virtues must equally belong to ruler and subject. The virtue of the subject is certainly not wisdom, but only true opinion; he may be compared to the maker of the flute, while his master is like the flute-player or user of the flute.¹⁶

From these considerations may be gathered the answer to the question, whether the virtue of the good man is the same as that of the good citizen, or different, and how far the same, and how far different.¹⁷

5 There still remains one more question about the citizen: Is he only a true citizen who has a share of office, or is the mechanic to be included? If they who hold no office are to be deemed citizens, not every citizen can have this virtue of ruling and obeying; for this man is a citizen. And if none of the lower class are citizens, in which part of the state are they to be placed? For they are not resident aliens, and they are not foreigners. May we not reply, that as far as this objection goes there is no more absurdity in excluding them than in excluding slaves and freedmen from any of the above-mentioned classes? It must be admitted that we cannot consider all

¹⁴ Cp. i. 1260^a 20.

¹⁵ Cp. *Rep.* iv. 428.

¹⁶ Cp. *Rep.* x. 601 D, E.

¹⁷ Cp. 1278^a 40, 1288^a 39, iv. 1293^b 5, vii. 1333^a 11.

those to be citizens who are necessary to the existence of the state; for example, children are not citizens equally with grown-up men, who are citizens absolutely, but children, not being grown up, are only citizens on a certain assumption.¹⁸ Nay, in ancient times, and among some nations, the artisan class *were* slaves or foreigners, and therefore the majority of them are so now. The best form of state will not admit them to citizenship; but if they are admitted, then our definition of the virtue of a citizen will not apply to every citizen, nor to every free man as such, but only to those who are freed from necessary services. The necessary people are either slaves who minister to the wants of individuals, or mechanics and labourers who are the servants of the community. These reflections carried a little further will explain their position; and indeed what has been said already¹⁹ is of itself, when understood, explanation enough.

Since there are many forms of government there must be many varieties of citizens, and especially of citizens who are subjects; so that under some governments the mechanic and the labourer will be citizens, but not in others, as, for example, in aristocracy or the so-called government of the best (if there be such an one), in which honours are given according to virtue and merit; for no man can practise virtue who is living the life of a mechanic or labourer. In oligarchies the qualification for office is high, and therefore no labourer can ever be a citizen; but a mechanic may, for an actual majority of them are rich. At Thebes²⁰ there was a law that no man could hold office who had not retired from business for ten years. But in many states the law goes to the length of admitting aliens; for in some democracies a man is a citi-

¹⁸ *sc.* that they grow up to be men.

²⁰ Cp. vi. 1321^a 28.

¹⁹ 1275^a 38 sqq.

zen though his mother only be a citizen; and a similar principle is applied to illegitimate children; the law is relaxed when there is a dearth of population. But when
 30 the number of citizens increases, first the children of a male or a female slave are excluded; then those whose mothers only are citizens; and at last the right of citizenship is confined to those whose fathers and mothers are both citizens.

35 Hence, as is evident, there are different kinds of citizens; and he is a citizen in the highest sense who shares in the honours of the state. Compare Homer's words 'like some dishonoured stranger';²¹ he who is excluded from the honours of the state is no better than an alien. But when this exclusion is concealed, then the object is that the privileged class may deceive their fellow inhabitants.

40 As to the question whether the virtue of the good man
 1278^b is the same as that of the good citizen, the considerations already adduced prove that in some states the good man and the good citizen are the same, and in others different. When they are the same it is not every citizen who is a good man, but only the statesman and those who have or
 5 may have, alone or in conjunction with others, the conduct of public affairs.

6 Having determined these questions, we have next to consider whether there is only one form of government or many, and if many, what they are, and how many, and what are the differences between them.

10 A constitution is the arrangement of magistracies in a state,²² especially of the highest of all. The government is everywhere sovereign in the state, and the constitution is in fact the government. For example, in de-

²¹ Achilles complains of Agamemnon's so treating him, *Il.* ix. 648, xvi. 59.

²² Cp. 1274^b 38, iv. 1289^a 15.

mocracies the people are supreme, but in oligarchies, the few; and, therefore, we say that these two forms of government also are different: and so in other cases.

First, let us consider what is the purpose of a state, and 15 how many forms of government there are by which human society is regulated. We have already said, in the first part of this treatise,²³ when discussing household management and the rule of a master, that man is by nature a political animal. And therefore, men, even when 20 they do not require one another's help, desire to live together; not but that they are also brought together by their common interests in proportion as they severally attain to any measure of well-being. This is certainly the chief end, both of individuals and of states. And also for the sake of mere life (in which there is possibly some 25 noble element so long as the evils of existence do not greatly overbalance the good) mankind meet together and maintain the political community. And we all see that men cling to life even at the cost of enduring great misfortune, seeming to find in life a natural sweetness and happiness.

There is no difficulty in distinguishing the various 30 kinds of authority; they have been often defined already in discussions outside the school. The rule of a master, although the slave by nature and the master by nature have in reality the same interests, is nevertheless exercised primarily with a view to the interest of the master, 35 but accidentally considers the slave, since, if the slave perish, the rule of the master perishes with him. On the other hand, the government of a wife and children and of a household, which we have called household management, is exercised in the first instance for the good of the governed or for the common good of both parties, but

²³ Cp. i. 1253^a 2.

40 essentially for the good of the governed, as we see to be
1279^a the case in medicine, gymnastic, and the arts in general,
which are only accidentally concerned with the good of
the artists themselves.²⁴ For there is no reason why the
trainer may not sometimes practise gymnastics, and the
helmsman is always one of the crew. The trainer or
the helmsman considers the good of those committed to
5 his care. But, when he is one of the persons taken care
of, he accidentally participates in the advantage, for the
helmsman is also a sailor, and the trainer becomes one
of those in training. And so in politics: when the state is
framed upon the principle of equality and likeness, the
10 citizens think that they ought to hold office by turns.
Formerly, as is natural, every one would take his turn
of service; and then again, somebody else would look
after his interest, just as he, while in office, had looked
after theirs.²⁵ But nowadays, for the sake of the advan-
tage which is to be gained from the public revenues and
from office, men want to be always in office. One might
15 imagine that the rulers, being sickly, were only kept in
health while they continued in office; in that case we may
be sure that they would be hunting after places. The con-
clusion is evident: that governments which have a regard
to the common interest are constituted in accordance
with strict principles of justice, and are therefore true
forms; but those which regard only the interest of the
20 rulers are all defective and perverted forms, for they are
despotic, whereas a state is a community of freemen.

7 Having determined these points, we have next to
consider how many forms of government there are, and
what they are; and in the first place what are the true
forms, for when they are determined the perversions of

²⁴ *Cd. Pl. Rep. i. 341 D.*

²⁵ *Cp. ii. 1261^a 37—b 6.*

them will at once be apparent. The words constitution 25 and government have the same meaning, and the government, which is the supreme authority in states, must be in the hands of one, or of a few, or of the many. The true forms of government, therefore, are those in which the one, or the few, or the many, govern with a view to the common interest; but governments which rule with a 30 view to the private interest, whether of the one, or of the few, or of the many, are perversions.²⁶ For the members of a state, if they are truly citizens, ought to participate in its advantages. Of forms of government in which one rules, we call that which regards the common interests, kingship or royalty; that in which more than one, 35 but not many, rule, aristocracy; and it is so called, either because the rulers are the best men, or because they have at heart the best interests of the state and of the citizens. But when the citizens at large administer the state for the common interest, the government is called by the generic name—a constitution. And there is a reason for this use of language. One man or a few may excel in virtue; but 40 as the number increases it becomes more difficult for 1279^b them to attain perfection in every kind of virtue, though they may in military virtue, for this is found in the masses. Hence in a constitutional government the fighting-men have the supreme power, and those who possess arms are the citizens.

Of the above-mentioned forms, the perversions are as follows:—of royalty, tyranny; of aristocracy, oligarchy; 5 of constitutional government, democracy. For tyranny is a kind of monarchy which has in view the interest of the monarch only; oligarchy has in view the interest of the wealthy; democracy, of the needy: none of them the common good of all. 10

²⁶ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* viii. 10.

8 But there are difficulties about these forms of government, and it will therefore be necessary to state a little more at length the nature of each of them. For he who would make a philosophical study of the various sciences, and does not regard practice only, ought not to
15 overlook or omit anything, but to set forth the truth in every particular. Tyranny, as I was saying, is monarchy exercising the rule of a master over the political society; oligarchy is when men of property have the government in their hands; democracy, the opposite, when the indigent, and not the men of property, are the rulers. And here arises the first of our difficulties, and it relates to
20 the distinction just drawn. For democracy is said to be the government of the many. But what if the many are men of property and have the power in their hands? In like manner oligarchy is said to be the government of the few; but what if the poor are fewer than the rich,
25 and have the power in their hands because they are stronger? In these cases the distinction which we have drawn between these different forms of government would no longer hold good.

Suppose, once more, that we add wealth to the few and poverty to the many, and name the governments accordingly—an oligarchy is said to be that in which the few and the wealthy, and a democracy that in which the many
30 and the poor are the rulers—there will still be a difficulty. For, if the only forms of government are the ones already mentioned, how shall we describe those other governments also just mentioned by us, in which the rich are the more numerous and the poor are the fewer, and both govern in their respective states?

35 The argument seems to show that, whether in oligarchies or in democracies, the number of the governing body, whether the greater number, as in a democracy, or

the smaller number, as in an oligarchy, is an accident due to the fact that the rich everywhere are few, and the poor numerous. But if so, there is a misapprehension of the causes of the difference between them. For the real difference between democracy and oligarchy is poverty and wealth. Wherever men rule by reason of their wealth, whether they be few or many, that is an oligarchy, and where the poor rule, that is a democracy. But as a fact the rich are few and the poor many; for few are well-to-do, whereas freedom is enjoyed by all, and wealth and freedom are the grounds on which the oligarchical and democratical parties respectively claim power in the state.

9 Let us begin by considering the common definitions of oligarchy and democracy, and what is justice oligarchical and democratical. For all men cling to justice of some kind, but their conceptions are imperfect and they do not express the whole idea. For example, justice is thought by them to be, and is, equality, not, however, for all, but only for equals. And inequality is thought to be, and is, justice; neither is this for all, but only for unequals. When the persons are omitted, then men judge erroneously. The reason is that they are passing judgement on themselves, and most people are bad judges in their own case. And whereas justice implies a relation to persons as well as to things, and a just distribution, as I have already said in the *Ethics*,²⁷ implies the same ratio between the persons and between the things, they agree about the equality of the things, but dispute about the equality of the persons, chiefly for the reason which I have just given—because they are bad judges in their own affairs; and secondly, because both the parties to the argument are speaking of a limited and partial jus-

²⁷ v. 1131^a 15.

tice, but imagine themselves to be speaking of absolute justice. For the one party, if they are unequal in one respect, for example wealth, consider themselves to be unequal in all; and the other party, if they are equal in one respect, for example free birth, consider themselves
 25 to be equal in all. But they leave out the capital point. For if men met and associated out of regard to wealth only, their share in the state would be proportioned to their property, and the oligarchical doctrine would then seem to carry the day. It would not be just that he who paid one mina should have the same share of a hundred
 30 minae, whether of the principal or of the profits, as he who paid the remaining ninety-nine. But a state exists for the sake of a good life, and not for the sake of life only: if life only were the object, slaves and brute animals might form a state, but they cannot, for they have no share in happiness or in a life of free choice. Nor does
 35 a state exist for the sake of alliance and security from injustice, nor yet for the sake of exchange and mutual intercourse; for then the Tyrrhenians and the Carthaginians, and all who have commercial treaties with one another,²⁸ would be the citizens of one state. True, they have agreements about imports, and engagements that
 40 they will do no wrong to one another, and written articles
 1280^b of alliance. But there are no magistracies common to the contracting parties who will enforce their engagements; different states have each their own magistracies. Nor does one state take care that the citizens of the other are such as they ought to be, nor see that those who come under the terms of the treaty do no wrong or wickedness at all, but only that they do no injustice to one another.
 5 Whereas, those who care for good government take into consideration virtue and vice in states. Whence it may

²⁸ Cp. 1275^a 10.

be further inferred that virtue must be the care of a state which is truly so called, and not merely enjoys the name: for without this end the community becomes a mere alliance which differs only in place from alliances of which the members live apart; and law is only a convention, 'a surety to one another of justice,' as the sophist Ly- 10 cophron says, and has no real power to make the citizens good and just.

This is obvious; for suppose distinct places, such as Corinth and Megara, to be brought together so that their walls touched, still they would not be one city, not even if the citizens had the right to intermarry, which is one 15 of the rights peculiarly characteristic of states. Again, if men dwelt at a distance from one another, but not so far off as to have no intercourse, and there were laws among them that they should not wrong each other in their exchanges, neither would this be a state. Let us suppose 20 that one man is a carpenter, another a husbandman, another a shoemaker, and so on, and that their number is ten thousand: nevertheless, if they have nothing in common but exchange, alliance, and the like, that would not constitute a state. Why is this? Surely not because they 25 are at a distance from one another: for even supposing that such a community were to meet in one place, but that each man had a house of his own, which was in a manner his state, and that they made alliance with one another, but only against evil-doers; still an accurate thinker would not deem this to be a state, if their intercourse with one another was of the same character after as be- 30 fore their union. It is clear then that a state is not a mere society, having a common place, established for the prevention of mutual crime and for the sake of exchange.²⁹ These are conditions without which a state cannot exist;

²⁹ Cp. *Protag.* 322 B.

but all of them together do not constitute a state, which is a community of families and aggregations of families in well-being, for the sake of a perfect and self-sufficing
 35 life. Such a community can only be established among those who live in the same place and intermarry. Hence arise in cities family connexions, brotherhoods, common sacrifices, amusements which draw men together. But these are created by friendship, for the will to live together is friendship. The end of the state is the good life,
 40 and these are the means towards it. And the state is the
 1281^a union of families and villages in a perfect and self-sufficing life, by which we mean a happy and honourable life.³⁰

Our conclusion, then, is that political society exists for the sake of noble actions, and not of mere companionship.
 5 Hence they who contribute most to such a society have a greater share in it than those who have the same or a greater freedom or nobility of birth but are inferior to them in political virtue; or than those who exceed them in wealth but are surpassed by them in virtue.

From what has been said it will be clearly seen that all the partisans of different forms of government speak of
 10 a part of justice only.

10 There is also a doubt as to what is to be the supreme power in the state:—Is it the multitude? Or the wealthy? Or the good? Or the one best man? Or a tyrant? Any of these alternatives seems to involve disagreeable consequences. If the poor, for example, because they are more in number, divide among themselves the property of the
 15 rich—is not this unjust? No, by heaven (will be the reply), for the supreme authority justly willed it. But if this is not injustice, pray what is? Again, when in the first division all has been taken, and the majority divide

³⁰ Cp. i. 1252^b 27; *Nic. Eth.* i. 1097^b 6.

anew the property of the minority, is it not evident, if this goes on, that they will ruin the state? Yet surely, virtue is not the ruin of those who possess her, nor is justice destructive of a state; and therefore this law of confiscation clearly cannot be just. If it were, all the acts of a tyrant must of necessity be just; for he only coerces other men by superior power, just as the multitude coerce the rich. But is it just then that the few and the wealthy should be the rulers? And what if they, in like manner, rob and plunder the people—is this just? If so, the other case will likewise be just. But there can be no doubt that all these things are wrong and unjust.

Then ought the good to rule and have supreme power? But in that case everybody else, being excluded from power, will be dishonoured. For the offices of a state are posts of honour; and if one set of men always hold them, the rest must be deprived of them. Then will it be well that the one best man should rule? Nay, that is still more oligarchical, for the number of those who are dishonoured is thereby increased. Some one may say that it is bad in any case for a man, subject as he is to all the accidents of human passion, to have the supreme power, rather than the law. But what if the law itself be democratical or oligarchical, how will that help us out of our difficulties? ³¹ Not at all; the same consequences ³² will follow.

11 Most of these questions may be reserved for another occasion.³³ The principle that the multitude ought to be supreme rather than the few best is one that is maintained, and, though not free from difficulty, yet seems to contain an element of truth. For the many, of whom each individual is but an ordinary person, when they meet 1281^b

³¹ Cp. 1282^b 6.

³² Cp. II. 11-34.

³³ cc. 12-17, iv., vi.

together may very likely be better than the few good, if regarded not individually but collectively, just as a feast to which many contribute is better than a dinner provided out of a single purse. For each individual among the many has a share of virtue and prudence, and when
5 they meet together, they become in a manner one man, who has many feet, and hands, and senses; that is a figure of their mind and disposition. Hence the many are better judges than a single man of music and poetry; for some understand one part, and some another, and among them
10 they understand the whole. There is a similar combination of qualities in good men, who differ from any individual of the many, as the beautiful are said to differ from those who are not beautiful, and works of art from realities, because in them the scattered elements are combined, although, if taken separately, the eye of one person or some other feature in another person would be
15 fairer than in the picture. Whether this principle can apply to every democracy, and to all bodies of men, is not clear. Or rather, by heaven, in some cases it is impossible of application; for the argument would equally hold about brutes; and wherein, it will be asked, do some
20 men differ from brutes? But there may be bodies of men about whom our statement is nevertheless true. And if so, the difficulty which has been already raised,³⁴ and also another which is akin to it—viz. what power should be assigned to the mass of freemen and citizens, who are
25 not rich and have no personal merit—are both solved. There is still a danger in allowing them to share the great offices of state, for their folly will lead them into error, and their dishonesty into crime. But there is a danger also
30 in not letting them share, for a state in which many poor men are excluded from office will necessarily be full of

enemies. The only way of escape is to assign to them some deliberative and judicial functions. For this reason Solon³⁵ and certain other legislators give them the power of electing to offices, and of calling the magistrates to account, but they do not allow them to hold office singly. When they meet together their perceptions are quite good enough, and combined with the better class 35 they are useful to the state (just as impure food when mixed with what is pure sometimes makes the entire mass more wholesome than a small quantity of the pure would be), but each individual, left to himself, forms an imperfect judgement. On the other hand, the popular form of government involves certain difficulties. In the first place, it might be objected that he who can judge of the healing 40 of a sick man would be one who could himself heal his disease, and make him whole—that is, in other words, 1282* the physician; and so in all professions and arts. As, then, the physician ought to be called to account by physicians, so ought men in general to be called to account by their peers. But physicians are of three kinds:—there is the ordinary practitioner, and there is the physician of the higher class, and thirdly the intelligent man who has studied the art: in all arts there is such a class; and we attribute the power of judging to them quite as much as 5 to professors of the art. Secondly, does not the same principle apply to elections? For a right election can only be made by those who have knowledge; those who know geometry, for example, will choose a geometrician rightly, and those who know how to steer, a pilot; and, even if there be some occupations and arts in which 10 private persons share in the ability to choose, they certainly cannot choose better than those who know. So that, according to this argument, neither the election of

³⁵ Cp. ii. 1274^a 15.

magistrates, nor the calling of them to account, should be entrusted to the many. Yet possibly these objections
15 are to a great extent met by our old answer,³⁶ that if the people are not utterly degraded, although individually they may be worse judges than those who have special knowledge—as a body they are as good or better. Moreover, there are some arts whose products are not judged of solely, or best, by the artists themselves, namely those arts whose products are recognized even by those who
20 do not possess the art; for example, the knowledge of the house is not limited to the builder only; the user, or, in other words, the master, of the house will be even a better judge than the builder, just as the pilot will judge better of a rudder than the carpenter, and the guest will judge better of a feast than the cook.

This difficulty seems now to be sufficiently answered,
25 but there is another akin to it. That inferior persons should have authority in greater matters than the good would appear to be a strange thing, yet the election and calling to account of the magistrates is the greatest of all. And these, as I was saying,³⁷ are functions which in some states are assigned to the people, for the assembly is
30 supreme in all such matters. Yet persons of any age, and having but a small property qualification, sit in the assembly and deliberate and judge, although for the great officers of state, such as treasurers and generals, a high qualification is required. This difficulty may be solved in the same manner as the preceding, and the present practice of democracies may be really defensible. For
35 the power does not reside in the dicast, or senator, or ecclesiast, but in the court, and the senate, and the assembly, of which individual senators, or ecclesiasts, or dicasts, are only parts or members. And for this reason

³⁶ 1281^a 40-b 21.³⁷ 1281^b 32.

the many may claim to have a higher authority than the few; for the people, and the senate, and the courts consist of many persons, and their property collectively is greater than the property of one or of a few individuals ⁴⁰ holding great offices. But enough of this.

The discussion of the first question ³⁸ shows nothing ^{1282^b} so clearly as that laws, when good, should be supreme; and that the magistrate or magistrates should regulate those matters only on which the laws are unable to speak with precision owing to the difficulty of any general principle embracing all particulars. ³⁹ But what are good laws has not yet been clearly explained; the old difficulty remains. ⁴⁰ The goodness or badness, justice or injustice, of laws varies of necessity with the constitutions of states. This, however, is clear, that the laws must be adapted to ¹⁰ the constitutions. But if so, true forms of government will of necessity have just laws, and perverted forms of government will have unjust laws.

12 In all sciences and arts the end is a good, and the ¹⁵ greatest good and in the highest degree a good in the most authoritative of all ⁴¹—this is the political science of which the good is justice, in other words, the common interest. All men think justice to be a sort of equality; and to a certain extent ⁴² they agree in the philosophical distinctions which have been laid down by us about Ethics. ⁴³ For they admit that justice is a thing and has ²⁰ a relation to persons, and that equals ought to have equality. But there still remains a question: equality or inequality of what? Here is a difficulty which calls for political speculation. For very likely some persons will

³⁸ C. 10.

⁴⁰ Cp. 1281^a 36.

⁴² Cp. 1280^a 9.

³⁹ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* v. 1137^b 19.

⁴¹ Cp. i. 1252^a 2; *N. Eth.* i. 1094^a 1.

⁴³ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* v. 3.

say that offices of state ought to be unequally distributed
25 according to superior excellence, in whatever respect, of
the citizen, although there is no other difference between
him and the rest of the community; for that those who
differ in any one respect have different rights and claims.
But, surely, if this is true, the complexion or height of a
man, or any other advantage, will be a reason for his
30 obtaining a greater share of political rights. The error
here lies upon the surface, and may be illustrated from
the other arts and sciences. When a number of flute-
players are equal in their art, there is no reason why
those of them who are better born should have better
flutes given to them; for they will not play any better
on the flute, and the superior instrument should be re-
served for him who is the superior artist. If what I am
saying is still obscure, it will be made clearer as we pro-
35 ceed. For if there were a superior flute-player who was
far inferior in birth and beauty, although either of these
may be a greater good than the art of flute-playing, and
40 may excel flute-playing in a greater ratio than he excels
1283^a the others in his art, still he ought to have the best flutes
given to him, unless the advantages of wealth and birth
contribute to excellence in flute-playing, which they do
not. Moreover, upon this principle any good may be com-
pared with any other. For if a given height may be meas-
5 ured against wealth and against freedom, height in gen-
eral may be so measured. Thus if A excels in height more
than B in virtue, even if virtue in general excels height
still more, all goods will be commensurable; for if a cer-
tain amount is better than some other, it is clear that
10 some other will be equal. But since no such comparison
can be made, it is evident that there is good reason why
in politics men do not ground their claim to office on every
sort of inequality any more than in the arts. For if some

be slow, and others swift, that is no reason why the one should have little and the others much; it is in gymnastic contests that such excellence is rewarded. Whereas the rival claims of candidates for office can only be based on the possession of elements which enter into the composition of a state. And therefore the noble, or free-born, or rich, may with good reason claim office; for holders of offices must be freemen and tax-payers: a state can be no more composed entirely of poor men than entirely of slaves. But if wealth and freedom are necessary elements, justice and valour are equally so; ⁴⁴ for without the former qualities a state cannot exist at all, without the latter not well.

20

13 If the existence of the state is alone to be considered, then it would seem that all, or some at least, of these claims are just; but, if we take into account a good life, then, as I have already said, ⁴⁵ education and virtue have superior claims. As, however, those who are equal in one thing ought not to have an equal share in all, nor those who are unequal in one thing to have an unequal share in all, it is certain that all forms of government which rest on either of these principles are perversions. All men have a claim in a certain sense, as I have already admitted, ⁴⁶ but all have not an absolute claim. The rich claim because they have a greater share in the land, and land is the common element of the state; also they are generally more trustworthy in contracts. The free claim under the same title as the noble; for they are nearly akin. For the noble are citizens in a truer sense than the ignoble, and good birth is always valued in a man's own home and country. ⁴⁷ Another rea-

35

⁴⁴ Cp. iv. 1291^a 19-33.

⁴⁶ 1280^a 9 sqq.

⁴⁵ Cp. 1281^a 4.

⁴⁷ Cp. i. 1255^a 32.

son is, that those who are sprung from better ancestors are likely to be better men, for nobility is excellence of race. Virtue, too, may be truly said to have a claim, for justice has been acknowledged by us to be a social⁴⁸ virtue, and it implies all others.⁴⁹ Again, the many may urge their claim against the few; for, when taken collectively, and compared with the few, they are stronger and richer and better. But, what if the good, the rich, the noble, and the other classes who make up a state, are all living together in the same city, will there, or will there not, be any doubt who shall rule?—No doubt at all in determining who ought to rule in each of the above-mentioned forms of government. For states are characterized by differences in their governing bodies—one of them has a government of the rich, another of the virtuous, and so on. But a difficulty arises when all these elements co-exist. How are we to decide? Suppose the virtuous to be very few in number: may we consider their numbers in relation to their duties, and ask whether they are enough to administer the state, or so many as will make up a state? Objections may be urged against all the aspirants to political power. For those who found their claims on wealth or family might be thought to have no basis of justice; on this principle, if any one person were richer than all the rest, it is clear that he ought to be ruler of them. In like manner he who is very distinguished by his birth ought to have the superiority over all those who claim on the ground that they are freeborn. In an aristocracy, or government of the best, a like difficulty occurs about virtue; for if one citizen be better than the other members of the government, however good they may be, he too, upon the same principle of justice, should rule over them. And if the people are to be supreme because

⁴⁸ Cp. i. 1253^a 37.⁴⁹ Cp. *N. Eth.* v. 1129^b 25.

they are stronger than the few, then if one man, or more than one, but not a majority, is stronger than the many, 25 they ought to rule, and not the many.

All these considerations appear to show that none of the principles on which men claim to rule and to hold all other men in subjection to them are strictly right. To those who claim to be masters of the government on the 30 ground of their virtue or their wealth, the many might fairly answer that they themselves are often better and richer than the few—I do not say individually, but collectively. And another ingenious objection which is some- 35 times put forward may be met in a similar manner. Some persons doubt whether the legislator who desires to make the justest laws ought to legislate with a view to the good of the higher classes or of the many, when the case which we have mentioned occurs.⁵⁰ Now what is just or 40 right is to be interpreted in the sense of 'what is equal'; and that which is right in the sense of being equal is to be considered with reference to the advantage of the state, and the common good of the citizens. And a citizen is one who shares in governing and being governed. He differs under different forms of government, but in the 1284^a best state he is one who is able and willing to be governed and to govern with a view to the life of virtue.

If, however, there be some one person, or more than one, although not enough to make up the full complement of a state, whose virtue is so pre-eminent that the virtues 5 or the political capacity of all the rest admit of no comparison with his or theirs, he or they can be no longer regarded as part of a state; for justice will not be done to the superior, if he is reckoned only as the equal of those who are so far inferior to him in virtue and in political capacity. Such an one may truly be deemed a 10

⁵⁰ i. e. when the many collectively are better than the few.

God among men. Hence we see that legislation is necessarily concerned only with those who are equal in birth and in capacity; and that for men of pre-eminent virtue there is no law—they are themselves a law. Any one would be ridiculous who attempted to make laws for
 15 them: they would probably retort what, in the fable of Antisthenes, the lions said to the hares,⁵¹ when in the council of the beasts the latter began haranguing and claiming equality for all. And for this reason democratic states have instituted ostracism; equality is above all
 20 things their aim, and therefore they ostracized and banished from the city for a time those who seemed to predominate too much through their wealth, or the number of their friends, or through any other political influence. Mythology tells us that the Argonauts left Heracles behind for a similar reason; the ship Argo would not take
 25 him because she feared that he would have been too much for the rest of the crew. Wherefore those who denounce tyranny and blame the counsel which Periander gave to Thrasybulus cannot be held altogether just in their censure. The story is that Periander, when the herald was sent to ask counsel of him, said nothing, but
 30 only cut off the tallest ears of corn till he had brought the field to a level. The herald did not know the meaning of the action, but came and reported what he had seen to Thrasybulus, who understood that he was to cut off the principal men in the state; ⁵² and this is a policy not only
 35 expedient for tyrants or in practice confined to them, but equally necessary in oligarchies and democracies. Ostracism ⁵³ is a measure of the same kind, which acts by disabling and banishing the most prominent citizens. Great powers do the same to whole cities and nations, as

⁵¹ i. e. 'where are your claws and teeth?'

⁵² Cp. v. 1302^b 18.

⁵³ Cp. v. 1311^a 20.

the Athenians did to the Samians, Chians, and Lesbians; no sooner had they obtained a firm grasp of the empire, 40 than they humbled their allies contrary to treaty; and 1284^b the Persian king has repeatedly crushed the Medes, Babylonians, and other nations, when their spirit has been stirred by the recollection of their former greatness.

The problem is a universal one, and equally concerns all forms of government, true as well as false; for, although perverted forms with a view to their own interests may adopt this policy, those which seek the com- 5 mon interest do so likewise. The same thing may be observed in the arts and sciences; ⁵⁴ for the painter will not allow the figure to have a foot which, however beautiful, is not in proportion, nor will the ship-builder allow the 10 stern or any other part of the vessel to be unduly large, any more than the chorus-master will allow any one who sings louder or better than all the rest to sing in the choir. Monarchs, too, may practise compulsion and still live in harmony with their cities, if their own government 15 is for the interest of the state. Hence where there is an acknowledged superiority the argument in favour of ostracism is based upon a kind of political justice. It would certainly be better that the legislator should from the first so order his state as to have no need of such a remedy. But if the need arises, the next best thing is that he should endeavour to correct the evil by this or some similar measure. The principle, however, has not been 20 fairly applied in states; for, instead of looking to the good of their own constitution, they have used ostracism for factious purposes. It is true that under perverted forms of government, and from their special point of view, such a measure is just and expedient, but it is also clear that it is not absolutely just. In the perfect state 25

⁵⁴ Cp. v. 1302^b 34, 1309^b 21; vii. 1326^a 35; *Rep.* iv. 420.

there would be great doubts about the use of it, not when applied to excess in strength, wealth, popularity, or the like, but when used against some one who is pre-eminent in virtue—what is to be done with him? Mankind will not say that such an one is to be expelled and exiled; on
 30 the other hand, he ought not to be a subject—that would be as if mankind should claim to rule over Zeus, dividing his offices among them. The only alternative is that all should joyfully obey such a ruler, according to what seems to be the order of nature, and that men like him should be kings in their state for life.

35 14 The preceding discussion, by a natural transition, leads to the consideration of royalty, which we admit to be one of the true forms of government. Let us see whether in order to be well governed a state or country should be under the rule of a king or under some other form of government; and whether monarchy, although good for some, may not be bad for others. But first we
 40 must determine whether there is one species of royalty
 1285^a or many. It is easy to see that there are many, and that the manner of government is not the same in all of them.

Of royalties according to law, (1) the Lacedaemonian is thought to answer best to the true pattern; but there
 5 the royal power is not absolute, except when the kings go on an expedition, and then they take the command. Matters of religion are likewise committed to them. The kingly office is in truth a kind of generalship, irresponsible and perpetual. The king has not the power of life and death, except in a specified case, as for instance, in ancient times, he had it when upon a campaign, by right
 10 of force. This custom is described in Homer. For Agamemnon is patient when he is attacked in the assembly, but when the army goes out to battle he has the power

even of life and death. Does he not say?—‘When I find a man skulking apart from the battle, nothing shall save him from the dogs and vultures, for in my hands is death.’⁵⁵

This, then, is one form of royalty—a generalship for 15 life: and of such royalties some are hereditary and others elective.

(2) There is another sort of monarchy not uncommon among the barbarians, which nearly resembles tyranny. But this is both legal and hereditary. For barbarians, being more servile in character than Hellenes, and Asiatics than Europeans, do not rebel against a despotic government. Such royalties have the nature of tyrannies because the people are by nature slaves; ⁵⁶ but there is no danger of their being overthrown, for they are hereditary and legal. Wherefore also their guards are such as a king and not such as a tyrant would employ, 25 that is to say, they are composed of citizens, whereas the guards of tyrants are mercenaries.⁵⁷ For kings rule according to law over voluntary subjects, but tyrants over involuntary; and the one are guarded by their fellow-citizens, the others are guarded against them.

These are two forms of monarchy, and there was a 30 third (3) which existed in ancient Hellas, called an Aesymnetia or dictatorship. This may be defined generally as an elective tyranny, which, like the barbarian monarchy, is legal, but differs from it in not being hereditary. Sometimes the office was held for life, sometimes for a term of years, or until certain duties had been per- 35 formed. For example, the Mytilenaeans elected Pittacus leader against the exiles, who were headed by Antimenides and Alcaeus the poet. And Alcaeus himself

⁵⁵ *Il.* ii. 391–393. The last clause is not found in our Homer.

⁵⁶ *Cp.* i. 1252^b 7.

⁵⁷ *Cp.* v. 1311^a 7.

shows in one of his banquet odes that they chose Pittacus tyrant, for he reproaches his fellow-citizens for 'having made the low-born Pittacus tyrant of the spiritless and
 1285^b ill-fated city, with one voice shouting his praises'.

These forms of government have always had the character of tyrannies, because they possess despotic power; but inasmuch as they are elective and acquiesced in by their subjects, they are kingly.

(4) There is a fourth species of kingly rule—that of the heroic times—which was hereditary and legal, and
 5 was exercised over willing subjects. For the first chiefs were benefactors of the people⁵⁸ in arts or arms; they either gathered them into a community, or procured land for them; and thus they became kings of voluntary subjects, and their power was inherited by their descend-
 10 ants. They took the command in war and presided over the sacrifices, except those which required a priest. They also decided causes either with or without an oath; and when they swore, the form of the oath was the stretching out of their sceptre. In ancient times their power extended continuously to all things whatsoever, in city and
 15 country, as well as in foreign parts; but at a later date they relinquished several of these privileges, and others the people took from them, until in some states nothing was left to them but the sacrifices; and where they retained more of the reality they had only the right of leadership in war beyond the border.

20 These, then, are the four kinds of royalty. First the monarchy of the heroic ages; this was exercised over voluntary subjects, but limited to certain functions; the king was a general and a judge, and had the control of religion. The second is that of the barbarians, which is an hereditary despotic government in accordance with

⁵⁸ Cp. v. 1310^b 10.

law. A third is the power of the so-called Aesymnete or Dictator; this is an elective tyranny. The fourth is the Lacedaemonian, which is in fact a generalship, hereditary and perpetual. These four forms differ from one another in the manner which I have described.

(5) There is a fifth form of kingly rule in which one has the disposal of all, just as each nation or each state has the disposal of public matters; this form corresponds to the control of a household. For as household management is the kingly rule of a house, so kingly rule is the household management of a city, or of a nation, or of many nations.

15 Of these forms we need only consider two, the Lacedaemonian and the absolute royalty; for most of the others lie in a region between them, having less power than the last, and more than the first. Thus the inquiry is reduced to two points: first, is it advantageous to the state that there should be a perpetual general, and if so, should the office be confined to one family, or open to the citizens in turn? Secondly, is it well that a single man should have the supreme power in all things? The first question falls under the head of laws rather than of constitutions; for perpetual generalship might equally exist under any form of government, so that this matter may be dismissed for the present.⁵⁹ The other kind of royalty is a sort of constitution; this we have now to consider, and briefly to run over the difficulties involved in it. We will begin by inquiring whether it is more advantageous to be ruled by the best man or by the best laws.⁶⁰

The advocates of royalty maintain that the laws speak only in general terms, and cannot provide for circumstances; and that for any science to abide by written

⁵⁹ It is not discussed later.

⁶⁰ Cp. Plato, *Polit.* 294 A-295 C.

rules is absurd. In Egypt the physician is allowed to alter his treatment after the fourth day, but if sooner, he takes
15 the risk. Hence it is clear that a government acting according to written laws is plainly not the best. Yet surely the ruler cannot dispense with the general principle which exists in law; and that is a better ruler which is free from passion than that in which it is innate. Whereas the law is passionless, passion must ever sway the heart
20 of man. Yes, it may be replied, but then on the other hand an individual will be better able to deliberate in particular cases.

The best man, then, must legislate, and laws must be passed, but these laws will have no authority when they
25 miss the mark, though in all other cases retaining their authority. But when the law cannot determine a point at all, or not well, should the one best man or should all decide? According to our present practice assemblies meet, sit in judgment, deliberate, and decide, and their judgements all relate to individual cases. Now any member of the assembly, taken separately, is certainly inferior to the wise man. But the state is made up of many individuals. And as a feast to which all the guests contribute is better than a banquet furnished by a single
30 man,⁶¹ so a multitude is a better judge of many things than any individual.

Again, the many are more incorruptible than the few; they are like the greater quantity of water which is less easily corrupted than a little. The individual is liable to be overcome by anger or by some other passion, and then
35 his judgement is necessarily perverted; but it is hardly to be supposed that a great number of persons would all get into a passion and go wrong at the same moment. Let us assume that they are the freemen, and that they never

⁶¹ Cp. 1281^a 42.

act in violation of the law, but fill up the gaps which the law is obliged to leave. Or, if such virtue is scarcely attainable by the multitude, we need only suppose that the majority are good men and good citizens, and ask which will be the more incorruptible, the one good ruler, or the 40 many who are all good? Will not the many? But, you 1286^b will say, there may be parties among them, whereas the one man is not divided against himself. To which we may answer that their character is as good as his. If we call the rule of many men, who are all of them good, aristoc- 5 racy, and the rule of one man royalty, then aristocracy will be better for states than royalty, whether the government is supported by force or not,⁶² provided only that a number of men equal in virtue can be found.

The first governments were kingships, probably for this reason, because of old, when cities were small, men of eminent virtue were few. Further, they were made 10 kings because they were benefactors,⁶³ and benefits can only be bestowed by good men. But when many persons equal in merit arose, no longer enduring the pre-eminence of one, they desired to have a commonwealth, and set up a constitution. The ruling class soon deteriorated and enriched themselves out of the public treasury; riches became the path to honour, and so oligarchies 15 naturally grew up. These passed into tyrannies and tyrannies into democracies; for love of gain in the ruling classes was always tending to diminish their number, and so to strengthen the masses, who in the end set upon their masters and established democracies. Since cities 20 have increased in size, no other form of government appears to be any longer even easy to establish.⁶⁴

Even supposing the principle to be maintained that kingly power is the best thing for states, how about the

⁶² Cp. I. 27.⁶³ Cp. 1285^b 6.⁶⁴ Cp. iv. 1293^a 1, 1297^b 22.

family of the king? Are his children to succeed him? If they are no better than anybody else, that will be mischievous. But, says the lover of royalty, the king, though
 25 he might, will not hand on his power to his children. That, however, is hardly to be expected, and is too much to ask of human nature. There is also a difficulty about the force which he is to employ; should a king have guards about him by whose aid he may be able to coerce
 30 the refractory? If not, how will he administer his kingdom? Even if he be the lawful sovereign who does nothing arbitrarily or contrary to law, still he must have some force wherewith to maintain the law. In the case of a limited monarchy there is not much difficulty in answer-
 35 ing this question; the king must have such force as will be more than a match for one or more individuals, but not so great as that of the people. The ancients observe this principle when they have guards to any one whom they appointed dictator or tyrant. Thus, when Dionysius
 40 asked the Syracusans to allow him guards, somebody advised that they should give him only such a number.

1287^a 16 At this place in the discussion there impends the inquiry respecting the king who acts solely according to his own will; he has now to be considered. The so-called limited monarchy, or kingship according to law, as I have already remarked,⁶⁵ is not a distinct form of
 5 government, for under all governments, as, for example, in a democracy or aristocracy, there may be a general holding office for life, and one person is often made supreme over the administration of a state. A magistracy of this kind exists at Epidamnus,⁶⁶ and also at Opus, but
 10 in the latter city has a more limited power. Now, absolute monarchy, or the arbitrary rule of a sovereign over

⁶⁵ 1286^a 2.

⁶⁶ Cp. v. 1301^b 21.

all the citizens, in a city which consists of equals, is thought by some to be quite contrary to nature; it is argued that those who are by nature equals must have the same natural right and worth, and that for unequals to have an equal share, or for equals to have an uneven share, in the offices of state, is as bad as for different 15 bodily constitutions to have the same food and clothing. Wherefore it is thought to be just that among equals every one be ruled as well as rule, and therefore that all should have their turn. We thus arrive at law; for an order of succession implies law. And the rule of the law, it is argued, is preferable to that of any individual. On 20 the same principle, even if it be better for certain individuals to govern, they should be made only guardians and ministers of the law. For magistrates there must be —this is admitted; but then men say that to give authority to any one man when all are equal is unjust. Nay, there may indeed be cases which the law seems unable to determine, but in such cases can a man? Nay, it will 25 be replied, the law trains officers for this express purpose, and appoints them to determine matters which are left undecided by it, to the best of their judgement. Further, it permits them to make any amendment of the existing laws which experience suggests. Therefore he who bids the law rule may be deemed to bid God and Reason alone rule, but he who bids man rule adds an element of the beast; for desire is a wild beast, and passion perverts the 30 minds of rulers, even when they are the best of men. The law is reason unaffected by desire. We are told ⁶⁷ that a patient should call in a physician; he will not get better if he is doctored out of a book. But the parallel of the arts is clearly not in point; for the physician does nothing 35 contrary to rule from motives of friendship; he only

⁶⁷ Cp. 1286^a 12-14, *Polit.* 296 B.

cures a patient and takes a fee; whereas magistrates do many things from spite and partiality. And, indeed, if a man suspected the physician of being in league with his
 40 enemies to destroy him for a bribe, he would rather have recourse to the book. But certainly physicians, when they
 1287^b are sick, call in other physicians, and training-masters, when they are in training, other training-masters, as if they could not judge truly about their own case and might be influenced by their feelings. Hence it is evident that in seeking for justice men seek for the mean or neutral,⁶⁸
 5 for the law is the mean. Again, customary laws have more weight, and relate to more important matters, than written laws, and a man may be a safer ruler than the written law, but not safer than the customary law.

Again, it is by no means easy for one man to superintend many things; he will have to appoint a number of
 10 subordinates, and what difference does it make whether these subordinates always existed or were appointed by him because he needed them? If, as I said before,⁶⁹ the good man has a right to rule because he is better, still two good men are better than one: this is the old saying—

‘two going together’,⁷⁰

and the prayer of Agamemnon—

‘would that I had ten such counsellors!’⁷¹

15 And at this day there are magistrates, for example judges, who have authority to decide some matters which the law is unable to determine, since no one doubts that the law would command and decide in the best manner whatever it could. But some things can, and other things
 20 cannot, be comprehended under the law, and this is the

⁶⁸ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* v. 1132^a 22.

⁷⁰ *Il.* x. 224.

⁶⁹ 1283^b 21, 1284^b 32.

⁷¹ *Il.* ii. 372.

origin of the vexed question whether the best law or the best man should rule. For matters of detail about which men deliberate cannot be included in legislation. Nor does any one deny that the decision of such matters must be left to man, but it is argued that there should be many judges, and not one only. For every ruler who has been 25 trained by the law judges well; and it would surely seem strange that a person should see better with two eyes, or hear better with two ears, or act better with two hands or feet, than many with many; indeed, it is already the practice of kings to make to themselves many eyes and ears and hands and feet. For they make colleagues of 30 those who are the friends of themselves and their governments. They must be friends of the monarch and of his government; if not his friends, they will not do what he wants; but friendship implies likeness and equality; and, therefore, if he thinks that his friends ought to rule, he must think that those who are equal to himself and like 35 himself ought to rule equally with himself. These are the principal controversies relating to monarchy.

17 But may not all this be true in some cases and not in others? for there is by nature both a justice and an advantage appropriate to the rule of a master, another to kingly rule, another to constitutional rule; but there is none naturally appropriate to tyranny, or to any other perverted form of government; for these come into being contrary to nature. Now, to judge at least from what 40 has been said, it is manifest that, where men are alike and equal, it is neither expedient nor just that one man 1288^a should be lord of all, whether there are laws, or whether there are no laws, but he himself is in the place of law. Neither should a good man be lord over good men, nor a bad man over bad; nor, even if he excels in virtue,

should he have a right to rule, unless in a particular case, at which I have already hinted, and to which I will once
5 more recur.⁷² But first of all, I must determine what natures are suited for government by a king, and what for an aristocracy, and what for a constitutional government.

A people who are by nature capable of producing a race superior in the virtue needed for political rule are fitted for kingly government; and a people submitting
10 to be ruled as freemen by men whose virtue renders them capable of political command are adapted for an aristocracy; while the people who are suited for constitutional freedom are those among whom there naturally exists a warlike multitude⁷³ able to rule and to obey in turn by a law which gives office to the well-to-do according
15 to their desert. But when a whole family, or some individual, happens to be so pre-eminent in virtue as to surpass all others, then it is just that they should be the royal family and supreme over all, or that this one citizen should be king of the whole nation. For, as I said be-
20 fore,⁷⁴ to give them authority is not only agreeable to that ground of right which the founders of all states, whether aristocratical, or oligarchical, or again democratical, are accustomed to put forward (for these all recognize the claim of excellence, although not the same
25 excellence), but accords with the principle already laid down. For surely it would not be right to kill, or ostracize, or exile such a person, or require that he should take his turn in being governed. The whole is naturally superior to the part, and he who has this pre-eminence is in the relation of a whole to a part. But if so, the only alternative is that he should have the supreme power,

⁷² 1284^a 3, and 1288^a 15.

⁷⁴ 1283^b 20, 1284^a 3-17, ^b25.

⁷³ Cp. 1279^b 2.

and that mankind should obey him, not in turn, but 30
always. These are the conclusions at which we arrive
respecting royalty and its various forms, and this is the
answer to the question, whether it is or is not advan-
tageous to states, and to which, and how.

18 We maintain⁷⁵ that the true forms of government
are three, and that the best must be that which is ad- 35
ministered by the best, and in which there is one man,
or a whole family, or many persons, excelling all the
others together in virtue, and both rulers and subjects
are fitted, the one to rule, the others to be ruled, in such
a manner as to attain the most eligible life. We showed
at the commencement of our inquiry⁷⁶ that the virtue of
the good man is necessarily the same as the virtue of the
citizen of the perfect state. Clearly then in the same
manner, and by the same means through which a man 40
becomes truly good, he will frame a state that is to be 1288^b
ruled by an aristocracy or by a king, and the same edu-
cation and the same habits will be found to make a good
man and a man fit to be a statesman or king.

Having arrived at these conclusions, we must proceed
to speak of the perfect state, and describe how it comes 5
into being and is established.

⁷⁵ Cp. 1279^a 22-24.

⁷⁶ cc. 4, 5.

BOOK IV

10 1 In all arts and sciences which embrace the whole of any subject, and do not come into being in a fragmentary way, it is the province of a single art or science to consider all that appertains to a single subject. For example, the art of gymnastic considers not only the suitability of different modes of training to different bodies (2), but what sort is absolutely the best (1); (for the absolutely best must suit that which is by nature best and best furnished with the means of life), and also
15 what common form of training is adapted to the great majority of men (4). And if a man does not desire the best habit of body, or the greatest skill in gymnastics, which might be attained by him, still the trainer or the teacher of gymnastic should be able to impart any lower degree of either (3). The same principle equally holds in medicine and ship-building, and the making of clothes,
20 and in the arts generally.¹

Hence it is obvious that government too is the subject of a single science, which has to consider what government is best and of what sort it must be, to be most in accordance with our aspirations, if there were no external impediment, and also what kind of government
25 is adapted to particular states. For the best is often un-

¹ The numbers in this paragraph are made to correspond with the numbers in the next.

attainable, and therefore the true legislator and statesman ought to be acquainted, not only with (1) that which is best in the abstract, but also with (2) that which is best relatively to circumstances. We should be able further to say how a state may be constituted under any given conditions (3); both how it is originally formed and, when formed, how it may be longest preserved; the supposed state being so far from having the best constitution that it is unprovided even with the conditions necessary for the best; neither is it the best under the circumstances, but of an inferior type.

He ought, moreover, to know (4) the form of government which is best suited to states in general; for political writers, although they have excellent ideas, are often unpractical. We should consider, not only what form of government is best, but also what is possible and what is easily attainable by all. There are some who would have none but the most perfect; for this many natural advantages are required. Others, again, speak of a more attainable form, and, although they reject the constitution under which they are living, they extol some one in particular, for example the Lacedaemonian.² Any change of government which has to be introduced should be one which men, starting from their existing constitutions, will be both willing and able to adopt, since there is quite as much trouble in the reformation of an old constitution as in the establishment of a new one, just as to unlearn is as hard as to learn. And therefore, in addition to the qualifications of the statesman already mentioned, he should be able to find remedies for the defects of existing constitutions, as has been said before.³ This he cannot do unless he knows how many forms of government there are. It is often supposed that there is only

² Cp. ii. 1265^b 35.

³ Cp. 1288^b 29.

10 one kind of democracy and one of oligarchy. But this is a mistake; and, in order to avoid such mistakes, we must ascertain what differences there are in the constitutions of states, and in how many ways they are combined. The same political insight will enable a man to know which laws are the best, and which are suited to different constitutions; for the laws are, and ought to be, relative to the constitution, and not the constitution to the laws. A
 15 constitution is the organization of offices in a state, and determines what is to be the governing body, and what is the end of each community. But laws are not to be confounded with the principles of the constitution; they are the rules according to which the magistrates should administer the state, and proceed against offenders. So that
 20 we must know the varieties, and the number of varieties, of each form of government, if only with a view to making laws. For the same laws cannot be equally suited to all oligarchies or to all democracies, since there is certainly more than one form both of democracy and of oligarchy.
 25

2 In our original discussion⁴ about governments we divided them into three true forms: kingly rule, aristocracy, and constitutional government, and three corresponding perversions—tyranny, oligarchy, and democracy. Of kingly rule and of aristocracy we have already spoken,⁵ for the inquiry into the perfect state is the same thing with the discussion of the two forms thus named, since both imply a principle of virtue provided with external means. We have already determined in what aristocracy and kingly rule differ from one another,
 30 and when the latter should be established.⁶ In what

⁴ iii. 7; Cp. *Nic. Eth.* viii. 10.

⁵ iii. 14–18.

⁶ iii. 1279^a 32–37, 1286^b 3–5, 1284^a 3–b34, ch. 17.

follows we have to describe the so-called constitutional government, which bears the common name of all constitutions, and the other forms, tyranny, oligarchy, and democracy.

It is obvious which of the three perversions is the worst, and which is the next in badness. That which is the perversion of the first and most divine is necessarily the worst. And just as a royal rule, if not a mere name, must exist by virtue of some great personal superiority in the king,⁷ so tyranny, which is the worst of governments, is necessarily the farthest removed from a well-constituted form; oligarchy is little better, for it is a long way from aristocracy, and democracy is the most tolerable of the three.

A writer⁸ who preceded me has already made these distinctions, but his point of view is not the same as mine. For he lays down the principle that when all the constitutions are good (the oligarchy and the rest being virtuous), democracy is the worst, but the best when all are bad. Whereas we maintain that they are in any case defective, and that one oligarchy is not to be accounted better than another, but only less bad.

Not to pursue this question further at present, let us begin by determining (1)⁹ how many varieties of constitution there are (since of democracy and oligarchy there are several): (2)¹⁰ what constitution is the most generally acceptable, and what is eligible in the next degree after the perfect state; and besides this what other there is which is aristocratical and well-constituted, and at the same time adapted to states in general; (3)¹¹ of the other forms of government to whom each is suited.

⁷ Cp. iii. 1284^a 3-b34, chs. 17, 18, v. 1310^b 10 sq., vii. 1325^b 10-12.

⁸ Plato, *Polit.* 302 E, 303 A.

⁹ C. 3-10.

¹⁰ C. 11.

¹¹ C. 12.

For democracy may meet the needs of some better than
 20 oligarchy, and conversely. In the next place (4)¹² we
 have to consider in what manner a man ought to proceed
 who desires to establish some one among these various
 forms, whether of democracy or of oligarchy; and lastly,
 (5)¹³ having briefly discussed these subjects to the best
 of our power, we will endeavour to ascertain the modes
 of ruin and preservation both of constitutions generally
 and of each separately, and to what causes they are to be
 25 attributed.

3 The reason why there are many forms of govern-
 ment is that every state contains many elements. In the
 first place we see that all states are made up of families,
 30 and in the multitude of citizens there must be some rich
 and some poor, and some in a middle condition; the rich
 are heavy-armed, and the poor not. Of the common
 people, some are husbandmen, and some traders, and
 some artisans. There are also among the notables dif-
 ferences of wealth and property—for example, in the
 35 number of horses which they keep, for they cannot afford
 to keep them unless they are rich. And therefore in old
 times the cities whose strength lay in their cavalry were
 oligarchies, and they used cavalry in wars against their
 neighbours; as was the practice of the Eretrians and
 Chalcidians, and also of the Magnesians on the river
 40 Maeander, and of other peoples in Asia. Besides differ-
 1290^a ences of wealth there are differences of rank and merit,
 and there are some other elements which were mentioned
 by us when in treating of aristocracy we enumerated the
 essentials of a state.¹⁴ Of these elements, sometimes all,
 sometimes the lesser and sometimes the greater number,

¹² Book vi. 1-7.¹³ Book v.¹⁴ iii. 1283^a 14 sq., and Cp. vii. 8, 9.

have a share in the government. It is evident then that 5
there must be many forms of government, differing in
kind, since the parts of which they are composed differ
from each other in kind. For a constitution is an organi-
zation of offices, which all the citizens distribute among
themselves, according to the power which different
classes possess, for example the rich or the poor, or ac-
cording to some principle of equality which includes 10
both. There must therefore be as many forms of govern-
ment as there are modes of arranging the offices, accord-
ing to the superiorities and the differences of the parts of
the state.

There are generally thought to be two principal forms:
as men say of the winds that there are but two—north
and south, and that the rest of them are only variations 15
of these, so of governments there are said to be only two
forms—democracy and oligarchy. For aristocracy is con-
sidered to be a kind of oligarchy, as being the rule of a
few, and the so-called constitutional government to be
really a democracy, just as among the winds we make
the west a variation of the north, and the east of the
south wind. Similarly of musical modes there are said 20
to be two kinds, the Dorian and the Phrygian; the other
arrangements of the scale are comprehended under one
or other of these two. About forms of government this
is a very favourite notion. But in either case the better
and more exact way is to distinguish, as I have done,¹⁵
the one or two which are true forms, and to regard the 25
others as perversions, whether of the most perfectly at-
tempered mode or of the best form of government: we
may compare the severer and more overpowering modes
to the oligarchical forms, and the more relaxed and gen-
tler ones to the democratic.

¹⁵ 1289^a 31-33, 40 sqq., Cp. viii. 1340^a 40-b5, 1342^a 28 sqq., b29 sqq.

4 It must not be assumed, as some are fond of saying,
 that democracy is simply that form of government in
 which the greater number are sovereign,¹⁶ for in oligar-
 chies, and indeed in every government, the majority
 rules; nor again is oligarchy that form of government in
 which a few are sovereign. Suppose the whole population
 35 of a city to be 1300, and that of these 1000 are rich, and
 do not allow the remaining 300 who are poor, but free,
 and in all other respects their equals, a share of the gov-
 ernment—no one will say that this is a democracy. In
 like manner, if the poor were few and the masters of the
 rich who outnumber them, no one would ever call such
 a government, in which the rich majority have no share
 of office, an oligarchy. Therefore we should rather say
 40 that democracy is the form of government in which the
 1290^b free are rulers, and oligarchy in which the rich; it is only
 an accident that the free are the many and the rich are
 the few. Otherwise a government in which the offices
 5 were given according to stature, as is said to be the case
 in Ethiopia, or according to beauty, would be an oli-
 garchy; for the number of tall or good-looking men is
 small. And yet oligarchy and democracy are not suffi-
 ciently distinguished merely by these two characteristics
 of wealth and freedom. Both of them contain many other
 elements, and therefore we must carry our analysis fur-
 ther, and say that the government is not a democracy in
 10 which the freemen, being few in number, rule over the
 many who are not free, as at Apollonia, on the Ionian
 Gulf, and at Thera; (for in each of these states the
 nobles, who were also the earliest settlers, were held in
 chief honour, although they were but a few out of many).
 Neither is it a democracy when the rich have the gov-
 ernment because they exceed in number; as was the case

¹⁶ Cp. iii. 1279^b 21.

formerly at Colophon, where the bulk of the inhabitants 15
were possessed of large property before the Lydian War.
But the form of government is a democracy when the
free, who are also poor and the majority, govern, and
an oligarchy when the rich and the noble govern, they
being at the same time few in number. 20

I have said that there are many forms of government,
and have explained to what causes the variety is due.
Why there are more than those already mentioned,¹⁷
and what they are, and whence they arise, I will now
proceed to consider, starting from the principle already
admitted,¹⁸ which is that every state consists, not of one,
but of many parts. If we were going to speak of the dif- 25
ferent species of animals, we should first of all determine
the organs which are indispensable to every animal, as
for example some organs of sense and the instruments
of receiving and digesting food, such as the mouth and
the stomach, besides organs of locomotion. Assuming
now that there are only so many kinds of organs, 30
but that there may be differences in them—I mean
different kinds of mouths, and stomachs, and per-
ceptive and locomotive organs—the possible combina-
tions of these differences will necessarily furnish many
varieties of animals. (For animals cannot be the same
which have different kinds of mouths or of ears.) And
when all the combinations are exhausted, there will be 35
as many sorts of animals as there are combinations of
the necessary organs. The same, then, is true of the forms
of government which have been described; states, as I
have repeatedly said,¹⁹ are composed, not of one, but of

¹⁷ i. e. democracy and oligarchy, Cp. 1290^a 13.

¹⁸ 1289^b 27 sq.

¹⁹ ii. 1261^a 22 sqq., iii. 1283^a 14 sqq., iv. 1289^b 27–1290^a 5, 1290^b
23 sq., Cp. iii. 1277^a 5 sqq.

40 many elements. One element is the food-producing class,
1291^a who are called husbandmen; a second, the class of me-
chanics who practise the arts without which a city cannot
exist;—of these arts some are absolutely necessary,
others contribute to luxury or to the grace of life. The
third class is that of traders, and by traders I mean those
5 who are engaged in buying and selling, whether in com-
merce or in retail trade. A fourth class is that of the
serfs or labourers. The warriors make up the fifth class,
and they are as necessary as any of the others, if the
country is not to be the slave of every invader. For how
can a state which has any title to the name be of a slavish
nature? The state is independent and self-sufficing, but
10 a slave is the reverse of independent. Hence we see that
this subject, though ingeniously, has not been satisfac-
torily treated in the *Republic*.²⁰ Socrates says that a
state is made up of four sorts of people who are abso-
lutely necessary; these are a weaver, a husbandman, a
15 shoemaker, and a builder; afterwards, finding that they
are not enough, he adds a smith, and again a herdsman,
to look after the necessary animals; then a merchant,
and then a retail trader. All these together form the
complement of the first state, as if a state were estab-
lished merely to supply the necessities of life, rather
than for the sake of the good, or stood equally in need of
shoemakers and of husbandmen. But he does not admit
20 into the state a military class until the country has in-
creased in size, and is beginning to encroach on its neigh-
bour's land, whereupon they go to war. Yet even amongst
his four original citizens, or whatever be the number of
those whom he associates in the state, there must be some
one who will dispense justice and determine what is just.
And as the soul may be said to be more truly part of an

²⁰ *Rep.* ii. 369.

animal than the body, so the higher parts of states, that 25
is to say, the warrior class, the class engaged in the ad-
ministration of justice, and that engaged in deliberation,
which is the special business of political common sense—
these are more essential to the state than the parts which
minister to the necessities of life. Whether their several
functions are the functions of different citizens, or of the 30
same—for it may often happen that the same persons are
both warriors and husbandmen—is immaterial to the
argument. The higher as well as the lower elements are
to be equally considered parts of the state, and if so, the
military element at any rate must be included. There are
also the wealthy who minister to the state with their
property; these form the seventh class. The eighth class
is that of magistrates and of officers; for the state cannot
exist without rulers. And therefore some must be able to 35
take office and to serve the state, either always or in
turn. There only remains the class of those who delib-
erate and who judge between disputants; we were just
now distinguishing them. If presence of all these ele-
ments, and their fair and equitable organization, is nec- 40
essary to states, then there must also be persons who 1291^a
have the ability of statesmen. Different functions appear
to be often combined in the same individual; for exam-
ple, the warrior may also be a husbandman, or an arti-
san; or, again, the counsellor a judge. And all claim to 5
possess political ability, and think that they are quite
competent to fill most offices. But the same persons can-
not be rich and poor at the same time. For this reason
the rich and the poor are regarded in an especial sense
as parts of a state. Again, because the rich are generally
few in number, while the poor are many, they appear to 10
be antagonistic, and as the one or the other prevails they
form the government. Hence arises the common opinion

that there are two kinds of government—democracy and oligarchy.

- I have already explained²¹ that there are many forms of constitution, and to what causes the variety is due.
- 15 Let me now show that there are different forms both of democracy and oligarchy, as will indeed be evident from what has preceded. For both in the common people and in the notables various classes are included; of the common people, one class are husbandmen, another artisans;
- 20 another traders, who are employed in buying and selling; another are the seafaring class, whether engaged in war or in trade, as ferrymen or as fishermen. (In many places any one of these classes forms quite a large population; for example, fishermen at Tarentum and Byzantium, crews of triremes at Athens, merchant seamen at
- 25 Aegina and Chios, ferrymen at Tenedos.) To the classes already mentioned may be added day-labourers, and those who, owing to their needy circumstances, have no leisure, or those who are not of free birth on both sides; and there may be other classes as well. The notables again may be divided according to their wealth, birth, virtue, education, and similar differences.
- 30 Of forms of democracy first comes that which is said to be based strictly on equality. In such a democracy the law says that it is just for the poor to have no more advantage than the rich; and that neither should be masters, but both equal. For if liberty and equality, as
- 35 is thought by some, are chiefly to be found in democracy, they will be best attained when all persons alike share in the government to the utmost. And since the people are the majority, and the opinion of the majority is decisive, such a government must necessarily be a democracy. Here then is one sort of democracy. There is

²¹ Cp. iii. c. 6.

another, in which the magistrates are elected according to a certain property qualification, but a low one; he who 40 has the required amount of property has a share in the government, but he who loses his property loses his rights. Another kind is that in which all the citizens who are 1292^a under no disqualification share in the government, but still the law is supreme. In another, everybody, if he be only a citizen, is admitted to the government, but the law is supreme as before. A fifth form of democracy, in other respects, the same, is that in which, not the law, but the 5 multitude, have the supreme power, and supersede the law by their decrees. This is a state of affairs brought about by the demagogues. For in democracies which are subject to the law the best citizens hold the first place, and there are no demagogues; but where the laws are not 10 supreme, there demagogues spring up. For the people becomes a monarch, and is many in one; and the many have the power in their hands, not as individuals, but collectively. Homer says that 'it is not good to have a rule of many',²² but whether he means this corporate rule, or the rule of many individuals, is uncertain. At all events this sort of democracy, which is now a monarch, and no longer 15 under the control of law, seeks to exercise monarchical sway, and grows into a despot; the flatterer is held in honour; this sort of democracy being relatively to other democracies what tyranny is to other forms of monarchy. The spirit of both is the same, and they alike exercise a despotic rule over the better citizens. The decrees of the demos correspond to the edicts of the tyrant; and the 20 demagogue is to the one what the flatterer is to the other. Both have great power;—the flatterer with the tyrant, the demagogue with democracies of the kind which we are describing. The demagogues make the decrees of the

25 people override the laws, by referring all things to the popular assembly. And therefore they grow great, because the people have all things in their hands, and they hold in their hands the votes of the people, who are too ready to listen to them. Further, those who have any complaint to bring against the magistrates say, 'let the people be judges'; the people are too happy to accept the invitation; and so the authority of every office is under-
 30 mined. Such a democracy is fairly open to the objection that it is not a constitution at all; for where the laws have no authority, there is no constitution. The law ought to be supreme over all, and the magistracies should judge of particulars, and only this should be considered a constitution. So that if democracy be a real form of govern-
 35 ment, the sort of system in which all things are regulated by decrees is clearly not even a democracy in the true sense of the word, for decrees relate only to particulars.²⁸

These then are the different kinds of democracy.

5 Of oligarchies, too, there are different kinds:—one
 40 where the property qualification for office is such that the poor, although they form the majority, have no share in the government, yet he who acquires a qualification may
 1292^b obtain a share. Another sort is when there is a qualification for office, but a high one, and the vacancies in the governing body are filled by co-optation. If the election is made out of all the qualified persons, a constitution of this kind inclines to an aristocracy, if out of a privileged class, to an oligarchy. Another sort of oligarchy is when
 5 the son succeeds the father. There is a fourth form, likewise hereditary, in which the magistrates are supreme and not the law. Among oligarchies this is what tyranny is among monarchies, and the last-mentioned form of

²⁸ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* v. 1137^b 27.

democracy among democracies; and in fact this sort of oligarchy receives the name of a dynasty (or rule of powerful families).

These are the different sorts of oligarchies and democracies. It should however be remembered that in many states²⁴ the constitution which is established by law, although not democratic, owing to the education and habits of the people may be administered democratically, and conversely in other states the established constitution may incline to democracy, but may be administered in an oligarchical spirit. This most often happens after a revolution: for governments do not change at once; at first the dominant party are content with encroaching a little upon their opponents. The laws which existed previously continue in force, but the authors of the revolution have the power in their hands.

6 From what has been already said we may safely infer that there are so many different kinds of democracies and of oligarchies. For it is evident that either all the classes whom we mentioned²⁵ must share in the government, or some only and not others. When the class of husbandmen and of those who possess moderate fortunes have the supreme power, the government is administered according to law. For the citizens being compelled to live by their labour have no leisure; and so they set up the authority of the law, and attend assemblies only when necessary. They all obtain a share in the government when they have acquired the qualification which is fixed by the law—the absolute exclusion of any class would be a step towards oligarchy; hence all who have acquired the property qualification are admitted to a share in the constitution. But leisure cannot be provided for them unless there

²⁴ Cp. v. 1301^b 10.

²⁵ 1291^b 17-30.

are revenues to support them. This is one sort of democracy, and these are the causes which give birth to it. Another kind is based on the distinction which naturally
35 comes next in order; in this, every one to whose birth there is no objection is eligible, but actually shares in the government only if he can find leisure. Hence in such a democracy the supreme power is vested in the laws, because the state has no means of paying the citizens. A third kind is when all freemen have a right to share in the government, but do not actually share, for the reason
40 which has been already given; so that in this form again the law must rule. A fourth kind of democracy is that
1293^a which comes latest in the history of states. In our own day, when cities have far outgrown their original size, and their revenues have increased, all the citizens have a place in the government, through the great preponderance of the multitude; and they all, including the poor
5 who receive pay, and therefore have leisure to exercise their rights, share in the administration. Indeed, when they are paid, the common people have the most leisure, for they are not hindered by the care of their property, which often fetters the rich, who are thereby prevented from taking part in the assembly or in the courts, and so the state is governed by the poor, who are a majority, and
10 not by the laws. So many kinds of democracies there are, and they grow out of these necessary causes.

Of oligarchies, one form is that in which the majority of the citizens have some property, but not very much; and this is the first form, which allows to any one who obtains the required amount the right of sharing in the
15 government. The sharers in the government being a numerous body, it follows that the law must govern, and not individuals. For in proportion as they are further removed from a monarchical form of government, and in

respect of property have neither so much as to be able to live without attending to business, nor so little as to need state support, they must admit the rule of law and not claim to rule themselves. But if the men of property in the state are fewer than in the former case, and own more property, there arises a second form of oligarchy. For the stronger they are, the more power they claim, and having this object in view, they themselves select those of the other classes who are to be admitted to the government; but, not being as yet strong enough to rule without the law, they make the law represent their wishes.²⁶ When this power is intensified by a further diminution of their numbers and increase of their property, there arises a third and further stage of oligarchy, in which the governing class keep the offices in their own hands, and the law ordains that the son shall succeed the father. When, again, the rulers have great wealth and numerous friends, this sort of family despotism approaches a monarchy; individuals rule and not the law. This is the fourth sort of oligarchy, and is analogous to the last sort of democracy.

7 There are still two forms besides democracy and oligarchy; one of them is universally recognized and included among the four principal forms of government, which are said to be (1) monarchy, (2) oligarchy, (3) democracy, and (4) the so-called aristocracy or government of the best. But there is also a fifth, which retains the generic name of polity or constitutional government; this is not common, and therefore has not been noticed by writers who attempt to enumerate the different kinds

²⁶ i. e. they make a law that the governing class shall have the power of co-optation from other classes.

of government; like Plato,²⁷ in their books about the
 1293^b state, they recognize four only. The term 'aristocracy' is
 rightly applied to the form of government which is de-
 scribed in the first part of our treatise;²⁸ for that only
 can be rightly called aristocracy which is a government
 formed of the best men absolutely, and not merely of
 men who are good when tried by any given standard. In
 5 the perfect state the good man is absolutely the same as
 the good citizen; whereas in other states the good citizen
 is only good relatively to his own form of government.
 But there are some states differing from oligarchies and
 also differing from the so-called polity or constitutional
 government; these are termed aristocracies, and in them
 10 magistrates are certainly chosen, both according to their
 wealth and according to their merit. Such a form of gov-
 ernment differs from each of the two just now men-
 tioned, and is termed an aristocracy. For indeed in states
 which do not make virtue the aim of the community, men
 of merit and reputation for virtue may be found. And so
 where a government has regard to wealth, virtue, and
 15 numbers, as at Carthage,²⁹ that is aristocracy; and also
 where it has regard only to two out of the three, as at
 Lacedaemon, to virtue and numbers, and the two prin-
 ciples of democracy and virtue temper each other. There
 are these two forms of aristocracy in addition to the first
 20 and perfect state, and there is a third form, viz. the con-
 stitutions which incline more than the so-called polity
 towards oligarchy.

8 I have yet to speak of the so-called polity and of
 tyranny. I put them in this order, not because a polity or
 constitutional government is to be regarded as a perver-

²⁷ *Rep.* viii, ix.

²⁸ iii. 1279^a 34, 1286^b 3, Cp. vii. 1328^b 37.

²⁹ Cp. ii. 1273^a 21-30.

sion any more than the above-mentioned aristocracies. The truth is, that they all fall short of the most perfect 25 form of government, and so they are reckoned among perversions, and the really perverted forms are perversions of these, as I said in the original discussion.³⁰ Last of all I will speak of tyranny, which I place last in the series because I am inquiring into the constitutions of states, and this is the very reverse of a constitution.

Having explained why I have adopted this order, I will 30 proceed to consider constitutional government; of which the nature will be clearer now that oligarchy and democracy have been defined. For polity or constitutional government may be described generally as a fusion of oligarchy and democracy; but the term is usually applied to those forms of government which incline towards de- 35 mocracy, and the term aristocracy to those which incline towards oligarchy, because birth and education are commonly the accompaniments of wealth. Moreover, the rich already possess the external advantages the want of which is a temptation to crime, and hence they are called noblemen and gentlemen. And inasmuch as aristocracy seeks to give predominance to the best of the citizens, 40 people say also of oligarchies that they are composed of noblemen and gentlemen. Now it appears to be an impossible thing that the state which is governed not by the best citizens but by the worst should be well-governed, 1294* and equally impossible that the state which is ill-governed should be governed by the best. But we must remember that good laws, if they are not obeyed, do not constitute good government. Hence there are two parts of good government; one is the actual obedience of citizens 5 to the laws, the other part is the goodness of the laws which they obey; they may obey bad laws as well as

³⁰ iii. 7.

good. And there may be a further subdivision; they may obey either the best laws which are attainable to them, or the best absolutely.

The distribution of offices according to merit is a special characteristic of aristocracy, for the principle of an aristocracy is virtue, as wealth is of an oligarchy, and freedom of a democracy. In all of them there of course exists the right of the majority, and whatever seems good to the majority of those who share in the government has authority. Now in most states the form called polity exists, for the fusion goes no further than the attempt to unite the freedom of the poor and the wealth of the rich, who commonly take the place of the noble. But as there are three grounds on which men claim an equal share in the government, freedom, wealth, and virtue (for the fourth or good birth is the result of the two last, being only ancient wealth and virtue), it is clear that the admixture of the two elements, that is to say, of the rich and poor, is to be called a polity or constitutional government; and the union of the three is to be called aristocracy or the government of the best, and more than any other form of government, except the true and ideal, has a right to this name.

Thus far I have shown the existence of forms of states other than monarchy, democracy, and oligarchy, and what they are, and in what aristocracies differ from one another, and polities from aristocracies—that the two latter are not very unlike is obvious.

9 Next we have to consider how by the side of oligarchy and democracy the so-called polity or constitutional government springs up, and how it should be organized. The nature of it will be at once understood from a comparison of oligarchy and democracy; we must ascertain their dif-

ferent characteristics, and taking a portion from each, put the two together, like the parts of an indenture. Now there are three modes in which fusions of government 35 may be affected. In the first mode we must combine the laws made by both governments, say concerning the administration of justice. In oligarchies they impose a fine on the rich if they do not serve as judges, and to the poor they give no pay; but in democracies they give pay to the poor and do not fine the rich. Now (1) the union of these 40 two modes³¹ is a common or middle term between them, and is therefore characteristic of a constitutional government, 1294^b for it is a combination of both. This is one mode of uniting the two elements. Or (2) a mean may be taken between the enactments of the two: thus democracies require no property qualification, or only a small one, from members of the assembly, oligarchies a high one; here neither of these is the common term, but a mean be- 5 tween them. (3) There is a third mode, in which something is borrowed from the oligarchical and something from the democratical principle. For example, the appointment of magistrates by lot is thought to be democratical, and the election of them oligarchical; democratical again when there is no property qualification, oligarchical when there is. In the aristocratical or consti- 10 tutional state, one element will be taken from each—from oligarchy the principle of electing to offices, from democracy the disregard of qualification. Such are the various modes of combination.

There is a true union of oligarchy and democracy 15 when the same state may be termed either a democracy or an oligarchy; those who use both names evidently feel that the fusion is complete. Such a fusion there is also in the mean; for both extremes appear in it. The Lacedae-

³¹ Cp. 1297^a 38.

- monian constitution, for example, is often described as
20 a democracy, because it has many democratical features.
In the first place the youth receive a democratical education. For the sons of the poor are brought up with the sons of the rich, who are educated in such a manner as to make it possible for the sons of the poor to be educated like them. A similar equality prevails in the following
25 period of life, and when the citizens are grown up to manhood the same rule is observed; there is no distinction between the rich and poor. In like manner they all have the same food at their public tables, and the rich wear only such clothing as any poor man can afford. Again, the people elect to one of the two greatest offices of state, and in the other they share; ³² for they elect the Senators and
30 share in the Ephoralty. By others the Spartan constitution is said to be an oligarchy, because it has many oligarchical elements. That all offices are filled by election and none by lot, is one of these oligarchical characteristics; that the power of inflicting death or banishment rests with a few persons is another; and there are others.
35 In a well attuned polity there should appear to be both elements and yet neither; also the government should rely on itself, and not on foreign aid, and on itself not through the good will of a majority—they might be equally well-disposed when there is a vicious form of government—but through the general willingness of all classes in the state to maintain the constitution.
40 Enough of the manner in which a constitutional government, and in which the so-called aristocracies ought to be framed.

1295^a 10 Of the nature of tyranny I have still to speak, in order that it may have its place in our inquiry (since even

³² Cp. ii. 1270^b 17.

tyranny is reckoned by us to be a form of government), although there is not much to be said about it. I have already in the former part of this treatise³³ discussed royalty or kingship according to the most usual meaning 5 of the term, and considered whether it is or is not advantageous to states, and what kind of royalty should be established, and from what source, and how.

When speaking of royalty we also spoke³⁴ of two forms of tyranny, which are both according to law, and 10 therefore easily pass into royalty. Among Barbarians there are elected monarchs who exercise a despotic power; despotic rulers were also elected in ancient Hellas, called Aesymnetes or dictators. These monarchies, when compared with one another, exhibit certain differ- 15 ences. And they are, as I said before,³⁵ royal, in so far as the monarch rules according to law over willing subjects; but they are tyrannical in so far as he is despotic and rules according to his own fancy. There is also a third kind of tyranny, which is the most typical form, and is the counterpart of the perfect monarchy. This tyranny is just that arbitrary power of an individual which is re- 20 sponsible to no one, and governs all alike, whether equals or better, with a view to its own advantage, not to that of its subjects, and therefore against their will. No freeman, if he can escape from it, will endure such a government.

The kinds of tyranny are such and so many, and for the reasons which I have given.

11 We have now to inquire what is the best constitution 25 for most states, and the best life for most men, neither assuming a standard of virtue which is above ordinary persons, nor an education which is exceptionally favoured by nature and circumstances, nor yet an ideal state

³³ iii. 14-17.

³⁴ iii. 1285^a 16-b₃.

³⁵ iii. 1285^b 2.

which is an aspiration only, but having regard to the life
 30 in which the majority are able to share, and to the form of
 government which states in general can attain. As to
 those aristocracies, as they are called, of which we were
 just now speaking,³⁶ they either lie beyond the possi-
 bilities of the greater number of states, or they approxi-
 mate to the so-called constitutional government, and
 therefore need no separate discussion. And in fact the
 35 conclusion at which we arrive respecting all these forms
 rests upon the same grounds. For if what was said in the
*Ethics*³⁷ is true, that the happy life is the life according
 to virtue lived without impediment, and that virtue is a
 mean, then the life which is in a mean, and in a mean
 attainable by every one, must be the best. And the same
 40 principles of virtue and vice are characteristic of cities
 and of constitutions; for the constitution is in a figure the
 1295^b life of the city.

Now in all states there are three elements: one class is
 very rich, another very poor, and a third in a mean. It is
 admitted that moderation and the mean are best, and
 therefore it will clearly be best to possess the gifts of for-
 5 tune in moderation; for in that condition of life men are
 most ready to follow rational principle. But he who
 greatly excels in beauty, strength, birth, or wealth, or on
 the other hand who is very poor, or very weak, or very
 much disgraced, finds it difficult to follow rational prin-
 ciple.³⁸ Of these two the one sort grow into violent and
 10 great criminals, the others into rogues and petty rascals.
 And two sorts of offences correspond to them, the one
 committed from violence, the other from roguery. Again,
 the middle class is least likely to shrink from rule, or to

³⁶ 1293^b 7-21, Cp. 1293^b 36-1294^a 25.

³⁷ *Nic. Eth.* i. 1098^a 16. vii. 1153^b 10, x. 1177^a 12.

³⁸ Cp. *Pl. Rep.* iv. 421 D ff.

be over-ambitious for it; both of which are injuries to the state. Again, those who have too much of the goods of fortune, strength, wealth, friends, and the like, are 15 neither willing nor able to submit to authority. The evil begins at home; for when they are boys, by reason of the luxury in which they are brought up,³⁹ they never learn, even at school, the habit of obedience. On the other hand, the very poor, who are in the opposite extreme, are too degraded. So that the one class cannot obey, and can only rule despotically; the other knows not how to command 20 and must be ruled like slaves. Thus arises a city, not of freemen, but of masters and slaves, the one despising, the other envying; and nothing can be more fatal to friendship and good fellowship in states than this: for good fellowship springs from friendship; when men are at enmity with one another, they would rather not even share the same path. But a city ought to be composed, as 25 far as possible, of equals and similars; and these are generally the middle classes. Wherefore the city which is composed of middle-class citizens is necessarily best constituted in respect of the elements of which we say the fabric of the state naturally consists.⁴⁰ And this is the class of citizens which is most secure in a state, for they 30 do not, like the poor, covet their neighbours' goods; nor do others covet theirs, as the poor covet the goods of the rich; and as they neither plot against others, nor are themselves plotted against, they pass through life safely. Wisely then did Phocylides pray—'Many things are best in the mean; I desire to be of a middle condition in my city.'

Thus it is manifest that the best political community 35 is formed by citizens of the middle class, and that those states are likely to be well-administered, in which the

³⁹ Cp. v. 1310^a 22.

⁴⁰ Cp. II. 1-3.

middle class is large, and stronger if possible than both the other classes, or at any rate than either singly; for the addition of the middle class turns the scale, and prevents
40 either of the extremes from being dominant. Great then
1296^a is the good fortune of a state in which the citizens have a moderate and sufficient property; for where some possess much, and the others nothing, there may arise an extreme democracy, or a pure oligarchy; or a tyranny may grow out of either extreme—either out of the most rampant democracy, or out of an oligarchy; but it is not so likely
5 to arise out of the middle constitutions and those akin to them. I will explain the reason of this hereafter, when I speak of the revolutions of states.⁴¹ The mean condition of states is clearly best, for no other is free from faction; and where the middle class is large, there are least likely to be factions and dissensions. For a similar reason large
10 states are less liable to faction than small ones, because in them the middle class is large; whereas in small states it is easy to divide all the citizens into two classes who are either rich or poor, and to leave nothing in the middle. And democracies are safer⁴² and more permanent than
15 oligarchies, because they have a middle class which is more numerous and has a greater share in the government; for when there is no middle class, and the poor greatly exceed in number, troubles arise, and the state soon comes to an end. A proof of the superiority of the middle class is that the best legislators have been of a
20 middle condition; for example, Solon, as his own verses testify; and Lycurgus, for he was not a king; and Charondas, and almost all legislators.

These considerations will help us to understand why most governments are either democratical or oligarchical. The reason is that the middle class is seldom numerous in

⁴¹ v. 1308^a 18–24.

⁴² Cp. v. 1302^a 8, 1307^a 16.

them, and whichever party, whether the rich or the common people, transgresses the mean and predominates, 25 draws the constitution its own way, and thus arises either oligarchy or democracy. There is another reason—the poor and the rich quarrel with one another, and whichever side gets the better, instead of establishing a just or popular government, regards political supremacy as the 30 prize of victory, and the one party sets up a democracy and the other an oligarchy. Further, both the parties which had the supremacy in Hellas looked only to the interest of their own form of government, and established in states, the one, democracies, and the other, oligarchies; they thought of their own advantage, of the public not 35 at all. For these reasons the middle form of government has rarely, if ever, existed, and among a very few only. One man alone of all who ever ruled in Hellas was induced to give this middle constitution to states. But it has 40 now become a habit among the citizens of states, not even 1296^t to care about equality; all men are seeking for dominion, or, if conquered, are willing to submit.

What then is the best form of government, and what makes it the best, is evident; and of other constitutions, since we say⁴³ that there are many kinds of democracy and many of oligarchy, it is not difficult to see which has the first and which the second or any other place in the 5 order of excellence, now that we have determined which is the best. For that which is nearest to the best must of necessity be better, and that which is furthest from it worse, if we are judging absolutely and not relatively to given conditions: I say ‘relatively to given conditions’, 10 since a particular government may be preferable, but another form may be better for some people.

⁴³ 1289^a 8, 1291^b 15–1292^b 10, 1292^b 22–1293^a 10.

12 We have now to consider what and what kind of government is suitable to what and what kind of men. I
15 may begin by assuming, as a general principle common to all governments, that the portion of the state which desires the permanence of the constitution ought to be stronger than that which desires the reverse. Now every city is composed of quality and quantity. By quality I mean freedom, wealth, education, good birth, and by
20 quantity, superiority of numbers. Quality may exist in one of the classes which make up the state, and quantity in the other. For example, the meanly-born may be more in number than the well-born, or the poor than the rich, yet they may not so much exceed in quantity as they fall short in quality; and therefore there must be a comparison of quantity and quality. Where the number of the
25 poor is more than proportioned to the wealth of the rich, there will naturally be a democracy, varying in form with the sort of people who compose it in each case. If, for example, the husbandmen exceed in number, the first form of democracy will then arise; if the artisans and
30 labouring class, the last; and so with the intermediate forms. But where the rich and the notables exceed in quality more than they fall short in quantity, there oligarchy arises, similarly assuming various forms according to the kind of superiority possessed by the oligarchs.

35 The legislator should always include the middle class in his government; if he makes his laws oligarchical, to the middle class let him look; if he makes them democratical, he should equally by his laws try to attach this class to the state. There only can the government ever be stable where the middle class exceeds one or both of the
40 others, and in that case there will be no fear that the rich
1297^a will unite with the poor against the rulers. For neither of them will ever be willing to serve the other, and if they

look for some form of government more suitable to both, they will find none better than this, for the rich and the poor will never consent to rule in turn, because they mis- 5 trust one another. The arbiter is always the one trusted, and he who is in the middle is an arbiter. The more perfect the admixture of the political elements, the more lasting will be the constitution. Many even of those who desire to form aristocratical governments make a mistake, not only in giving too much power to the rich, but in attempting to overreach the people. There comes a 10 time when out of a false good there arises a true evil, since the encroachments of the rich are more destructive to the constitution than those of the people.

13 The devices by which oligarchies deceive the people are five in number; they relate to (1) the assembly; (2) 15 the magistracies; (3) the courts of law; (4) the use of arms; (5) gymnastic exercises. (1) The assemblies are thrown open to all, but either the rich only are fined for non-attendance, or a much larger fine is inflicted upon them. (2) As to the magistracies, those who are qualified by property cannot decline office upon oath, but the poor 20 may. (3) In the law-courts the rich, and the rich only, are fined if they do not serve, the poor are let off with impunity, or, as in the laws of Charondas, a larger fine is inflicted on the rich, and a smaller one on the poor. In some states all citizens who have registered themselves are allowed to attend the assembly and to try causes; but if after registration they do not attend either in the assembly or at the courts, heavy fines are imposed upon 25 them. The intention is that through fear of the fines they may avoid registering themselves, and then they cannot sit in the law-courts or in the assembly. Concerning (4) the possession of arms, and (5) gymnastic exercises, they

30 legislate in a similar spirit. For the poor are not obliged to have arms, but the rich are fined for not having them; and in like manner no penalty is inflicted on the poor for non-attendance at the gymnasium, and consequently, having nothing to fear, they do not attend, whereas the rich are liable to a fine, and therefore they take care to attend.

35 These are the devices of oligarchical legislators, and in democracies they have counter devices. They pay the poor for attending the assemblies and the law-courts, and they inflict no penalty on the rich for non-attendance. It is obvious that he who would duly mix the two principles should combine the practice of both, and provide that the poor should be paid to attend, and the rich
40 fined if they do not attend, for then all will take part; if
1297^b there is no such combination, power will be in the hands of one party only. The government should be confined to those who carry arms. As to the property qualification, no absolute rule can be laid down, but we must see what is the highest qualification sufficiently comprehensive to
5 secure that the number of those who have the rights of citizens exceeds the number of those excluded. Even if they have no share in office, the poor, provided only that they are not outraged or deprived of their property, will be quiet enough.

But to secure gentle treatment for the poor is not an
10 easy thing, since a ruling class is not always humane. And in time of war the poor are apt to hesitate unless they are fed; when fed, they are willing enough to fight. In some states the government is vested, not only in those who are actually serving, but also in those who have served;
15 among the Malians, for example, the governing body consisted of the latter, while the magistrates were chosen from those actually on service. And the earliest govern-

ment which existed among the Hellenes, after the overthrow of the kingly power, grew up out of the warrior class, and was originally taken from the knights (for strength and superiority in war at that time depended on cavalry; ⁴⁴ indeed, without discipline, infantry are use- 20 less, and in ancient times there was no military knowledge or tactics, and therefore the strength of armies lay in their cavalry). But when cities increased and the heavy-armed grew in strength, more had a share in the government; and this is the reason why the states which we call constitutional governments have been hitherto called democracies. Ancient constitutions, as might be 25 expected, were oligarchical and royal; their population being small they had no considerable middle class; the people were weak in numbers and organization, and were therefore more contented to be governed.

I have explained why there are various forms of government, and why there are more than is generally supposed; for democracy, as well as other constitutions, has 30 more than one form: also what their differences are, and whence they arise, and what is the best form of government, speaking generally, and to whom the various forms of government are best suited; all this has now been explained.

14 Having thus gained an appropriate basis of discus- 35 sion, we will proceed to speak of the points which follow next in order. We will consider the subject not only in general but with reference to particular constitutions. All constitutions have three elements, concerning which the good lawgiver has to regard what is expedient for each constitution. When they are well-ordered, the constitution is well-ordered, and as they differ from one an- 40

⁴⁴ Cp. 1289^b 36, vi. 1321^a 8.

other, constitutions differ. There is (1) one element which deliberates about public affairs; secondly (2) that
§298^a concerned with the magistracies—the questions being, what they should be, over what they should exercise authority, and what should be the mode of electing to them; and thirdly (3) that which has judicial power.

The deliberative element has authority in matters of
5 war and peace, in making and unmaking alliances; it passes laws, inflicts death, exile, confiscation, elects magistrates and audits their accounts. These powers must be assigned either all to all the citizens or all to some of them (for example, to one or more magistracies, or different causes to different magistracies), or some of them to all, and others of them only to some. That all
10 things should be decided by all is characteristic of democracy; this is the sort of equality which the people desire. But there are various ways in which all may share in the government; they may deliberate, not all in one body, but by turns, as in the constitution of Telecles the Milesian. There are other constitutions in which the
15 boards of magistrates meet and deliberate, but come into office by turns, and are elected out of the tribes and the very smallest divisions of the state, until every one has obtained office in his turn. The citizens, on the other hand, are assembled only for the purposes of legislation, and to consult about the constitution, and to hear the edicts of the magistrates. In another variety of democ-
20 racy the citizens form one assembly, but meet only to elect magistrates, to pass laws, to advise about war and peace, and to make scrutinies. Other matters are referred severally to special magistrates, who are elected by vote or by lot out of all the citizens. Or again, the citizens
25 meet about election to offices and about scrutinies, and deliberate concerning war or alliances while other mat-

ters are administered by the magistrates, who, as far as is possible,⁴⁵ are elected by vote. I am speaking of those magistracies in which special knowledge is required. A fourth form of democracy is when all the citizens meet to deliberate about everything, and the magistrates decide nothing, but only make the preliminary inquiries; and that is the way in which the last and worst form of democracy, corresponding, as we maintain,⁴⁶ to the close family oligarchy and to tyranny, is at present administered. All these modes are democratical.

On the other hand, that some should deliberate about all is oligarchical. This again is a mode which, like the democratical, has many forms. When the deliberative class being elected out of those who have a moderate qualification are numerous and they respect and obey the prohibitions of the law without altering it, and any one who has the required qualification shares in the government, then, just because of this moderation, the oligarchy inclines towards polity. But when only selected individuals and not the whole people share in the deliberations of the state, then, although, as in the former case, they observe the law, the government is a pure oligarchy. Or, again, when those who have the power of deliberation are self-elected, and son succeeds father, and they and not the laws are supreme—the government is of necessity oligarchical. Where, again, particular persons have authority in particular matters;—for example, when the whole people decide about peace and war and hold scrutinies, but the magistrates regulate everything else, and they are elected by vote—there the government is an aristocracy. And if some questions are decided by magistrates elected by vote, and others by

⁴⁵ *sc.* in an advanced democracy. Cp. vi. 1317^b 21.

⁴⁶ 1292^a 17–21, 1293^a 32–34.

magistrates elected by lot, either absolutely or out of
10 select candidates, or elected partly by vote, partly by
lot—these practices are partly characteristic of an aristocratical government, and partly of a pure constitutional government.

These are the various forms of the deliberative body; they correspond to the various forms of government. And the government of each state is administered according to one or other of the principles which have been laid down. Now it is for the interest of democracy, according to the most prevalent notion of it (I am speaking
15 of that extreme form of democracy in which the people
are supreme even over the laws), with a view to better deliberation to adopt the custom of oligarchies respecting courts of law. For in oligarchies the rich who are wanted to be judges are compelled to attend under pain of a fine, whereas in democracies the poor are paid to attend. And this practice of oligarchies should be adopted by democracies in their public assemblies, for
20 they will advise better if they all deliberate together—the people with the notables and the notables with the people. It is also a good plan that those who deliberate should be elected by vote or by lot in equal numbers out of the different classes; and that if the people greatly
25 exceed in number those who have political training, pay should not be given to all, but only to as many as would balance the number of the notables, or that the number in excess should be eliminated by lot. But in oligarchies either certain persons should be co-opted from the mass, or a class of officers should be appointed such as exist in some states, who are termed *probuli* and guardians of the law; and the citizens should occupy themselves exclusively with matters on which these have previously
30 deliberated; for so the people will have a share in the

deliberations of the state, but will not be able to disturb the principles of the constitution. Again, in oligarchies either the people ought to accept the measures of the government, or not to pass anything contrary to them; or, if all are allowed to share in counsel, the decision should rest with the magistrates. The opposite of what is done in constitutional governments should be the rule in 35 oligarchies; the veto of the majority should be final, their assent not final, but the proposal should be referred back to the magistrates. Whereas in constitutional governments they take the contrary course; the few have the negative, not the affirmative power; the affirmation 40 of everything rests with the multitude. 1297^a

These, then, are our conclusions respecting the deliberative, that is, the supreme element in states.

15 Next we will proceed to consider the distribution of offices; this too, being a part of politics concerning which 5 many questions arise:—What shall their number be? Over what shall they preside, and what shall be their duration? Sometimes they last for six months, sometimes for less; sometimes they are annual, whilst in other cases offices are held for still longer periods. Shall they be for life or for a long term of years; or, if for a short term only, shall the same persons hold them over and over again, or once only? Also about the appoint- 10 ment to them—from whom are they to be chosen, by whom, and how? We should first be in a position to say what are the possible varieties of them, and then we may proceed to determine which are suited to different forms of government. But what are to be included under the term ‘offices’? That is a question not quite so easily answered. For a political community requires many of- 15 ficers; and not every one who is chosen by vote or by lot

is to be regarded as a ruler. In the first place there are the priests, who must be distinguished from political officers; masters of choruses and heralds, even ambassadors, are elected by vote. Some duties of superintendence again are political, extending either to all the citizens in a single sphere of action, like the office of the general who superintends them when they are in the field, or to a section of them only, like the inspectorships of women or of youth. Other offices are concerned with household management, like that of the corn measurers who exist in many states and are elected officers. There are also menial offices which the rich have executed by their slaves. Speaking generally, those are to be called offices to which the duties are assigned of deliberating about certain measures and of judging and commanding, especially the last; for to command is the especial duty of a magistrate. But the question is not of any importance in practice; no one has ever brought into court the meaning of the word, although such problems have a speculative interest.

What kinds of offices, and how many, are necessary to the existence of a state, and which, if not necessary, yet conduce to its well-being, are much more important considerations, affecting all constitutions, but more especially small states. For in great states it is possible, and indeed necessary, that every office should have a special function; where the citizens are numerous, many may hold office. And so it happens that some offices a man holds a second time only after a long interval, and others he holds once only; and certainly every work is better done which receives the sole, and not the divided attention of the worker. But in small states it is necessary to combine many offices in a few hands, since the small number of citizens does not admit of many holding office:

—for who will there be to succeed them? And yet small states at times require the same offices and laws as large ones; the difference is that the one want them often, the others only after long intervals. Hence there is no reason why the care of many offices should not be imposed on the same person, for they will not interfere with each other. When the population is small, offices should be like the spits which also serve to hold a lamp.⁴⁷ We must first ascertain how many magistrates are necessary in every state, and also how many are not exactly necessary, but are nevertheless useful, and then there will be no difficulty in seeing what offices can be combined in one. We should also know over which matters several local tribunals are to have jurisdiction, and in which authority should be centralized: for example, should one person keep order in the market and another in some other place, or should the same person be responsible everywhere? Again, should offices be divided according to the subjects with which they deal, or according to the persons with whom they deal: I mean to say, should one person see to good order in general, or one look after the boys, another after the women, and so on? Further, under different constitutions, should the magistrates be the same or different? For example, in democracy, oligarchy, aristocracy, monarchy, should there be the same magistrates, although they are elected, not out of equal or similar classes of citizens, but differently under different constitutions—in aristocracies, for example, they are chosen from the educated, in oligarchies from the wealthy, and in democracies from the free—are there certain differences in the offices answering to them as well, and may the same be suitable to some, but different offices to others? For in some states it may be

⁴⁷ Cp. 1252^b 2.

convenient that the same office should have a more extensive, in other states a narrower sphere. Special offices
30 are peculiar to certain forms of government:—for example that of probuli, which is not a democratic office, although a bule or council is. There must be some body of men whose duty is to prepare measures for the people in order that they may not be diverted from their business; when these are few in number, the state inclines to an oligarchy: or rather the probuli must always
35 be few, and are therefore an oligarchical element. But when both institutions exist in a state, the probuli are a check on the council; for the counsellor is a democratic element, but the probuli are oligarchical. Even the power
1300^a of the council disappears when democracy has taken that extreme form in which the people themselves are always meeting and deliberating about everything. This is the case when the members of the assembly receive abundant pay; for they have nothing to do and are always holding assemblies and deciding everything for themselves. A magistracy which controls the boys or the
5 women, or any similar office, is suited to an aristocracy rather than to a democracy; for how can the magistrates prevent the wives of the poor from going out of doors? Neither is it an oligarchical office; for the wives of the oligarchs are too fine to be controlled.

Enough of these matters. I will now inquire into appointments to offices. The varieties depend on three
10 terms, and the combinations of these give all possible modes: first, who appoints? secondly, from whom? and thirdly, how? Each of these three admits of three varieties:
15 ties: (A) All the citizens, or (B) only some, appoint. Either (1) the magistrates are chosen out of all or (2) out of some who are distinguished either by a property qualification, or by birth, or merit, or for some special

reason, as at Megara only those were eligible who had returned from exile and fought together against the democracy. They may be appointed either (a) by vote or (b) by lot. Again, these several varieties may be coupled, 20 I mean that (C) some officers may be elected by some, others by all, and (3) some again out of some, and others out of all, and (c) some by vote and others by lot. Each variety of these terms admits of four modes.

For either (A 1 a) all may appoint from all by vote, or (A 1 b) all from all by lot, or (A 2 a) all from some by vote, or (A 2 b) all from some by lot (and if from all, 25 either by sections, as, for example, by tribes, and wards, and phratries, until all the citizens have been gone through; or the citizens may be in all cases eligible indiscriminately); or again (A 1 c, A 2 c) to some offices in the one way, to some in the other. Again, if it is only some that appoint, they may do so either (B 1 a) from all by vote, or (B 1 b) from all by lot, or (B 2 a) from some by vote, or (B 2 b) from some by lot, or to some offices in the one way, to others in the other, i. e. (B 1 c) from all, to some offices by vote, to some by lot, and (B 2 c) from some, to some offices by vote, to some by 30 lot. Thus the modes that arise, apart from two (C, 3) out of the three couplings, number twelve. Of these systems two are popular, that all should appoint from all (A 1 a) by vote or (A 1 b) by lot—or (A 1 c) by both. That all should not appoint at once, but should appoint 35 from all or from some either by lot or by vote or by both, or appoint to some offices from all and to others from some ('by both' meaning to some offices by lot, to others by vote), is characteristic of a polity. And (B 1 c) that some should appoint from all, to some offices by vote, to others by lot, is also characteristic of a polity, but more oligarchical than the former method. And (A 3 a, b, c, 40

B 3 a, b, c) to appoint from both, to some offices from all, to others from some, is characteristic of a polity with a leaning towards aristocracy. That (B 2) some should
 1300^b appoint from some is oligarchical—even (B 2 b) that some should appoint from some by lot (and if this does not actually occur, it is none the less oligarchical in character), or (B 2 c) that some should appoint from some by both. (B 1 a) that some should appoint from all, and (A 2 a) that all should appoint from some, by vote, is aristocratic.

5 These are the different modes of constituting magistrates, and these correspond to different forms of government:—which are proper to which, or how they ought to be established, will be evident when we determine the nature of their powers.⁴⁸ By powers I mean such powers
 10 as a magistrate exercises over the revenue or in defence of the country; for there are various kinds of power: the power of the general, for example, is not the same with that which regulates contracts in the market.

16 Of the three parts of government, the judicial remains to be considered, and this we shall divide on the
 15 same principle. There are three points on which the varieties of law-courts depend: The persons from whom they are appointed, the matters with which they are concerned, and the manner of their appointment. I mean, (1) are the judges taken from all, or from some only? (2) how many kinds of law-courts are there? (3) are the judges chosen by vote or by lot?

First, let me determine how many kinds of law-courts
 20 there are. There are eight in number: One is the court of audits or scrutinies; a second takes cognizance of ordinary offences against the state; a third is concerned

⁴⁸ The promise is not fulfilled in the *Politics*.

with treason against the constitution; the fourth determines disputes respecting penalties, whether raised by magistrates or by private persons; the fifth decides the more important civil cases; the sixth tries cases of homicide, which are of various kinds, (*a*) premeditated, (*b*) involuntary, (*c*) cases in which the guilt is confessed but the justice is disputed; and there may be a fourth court (*d*) in which murderers who have fled from justice are tried after their return; such as the Court of Phreatto is said to be at Athens. But cases of this sort rarely happen at all even in large cities. The different kinds of homicide may be tried either by the same or by different courts. (7) There are courts for strangers:—of these there are two subdivisions, (*a*) for the settlement of their disputes with one another, (*b*) for the settlement of disputes between them and the citizens. And besides all these there must be (8) courts for small suits about sums of a drachma up to five drachmas, or a little more, which have to be determined, but they do not require many judges.

Nothing more need be said of these small suits, nor of the courts for homicide and for strangers:—I would rather speak of political cases, which, when mismanaged, create division and disturbances in constitutions.

Now if all the citizens judge, in all the different cases which I have distinguished, they may be appointed by vote or by lot, or sometimes by lot and sometimes by vote. Or when a single class of causes are tried, the judges who decide them may be appointed, some by vote, and some by lot. These then are the four modes of appointing judges from the whole people, and there will be likewise four modes, if they are elected from a part only; for they may be appointed from some by vote and judge in all causes; or they may be appointed from

some by lot and judge in all causes; or they may be elected in some cases by vote, and in some cases taken by lot, or some courts, even when judging the same causes, may be composed of members some appointed by vote and some by lot. These modes, then, as was said,
5 answer to those previously mentioned.

Once more, the modes of appointment may be combined; I mean, that some may be chosen out of the whole people, others out of some, some out of both; for example, the same tribunal may be composed of some who were elected out of all, and of others who were elected out of some, either by vote or by lot or by both.

10 In how many forms law-courts can be established has now been considered. The first form, viz. that in which the judges are taken from all the citizens, and in which all causes are tried, is democratical; the second, which is composed of a few only who try all causes, oligarchical; the third, in which some courts are taken from all
15 classes, and some from certain classes only, aristocratical and constitutional.

BOOK V

1 The design which we proposed to ourselves is now nearly completed.¹ Next in order follow the causes of 20 revolution in states, how many, and of what nature they are; what modes of destruction apply to particular states, and out of what, and into what they mostly change; also what are the modes of preservation in states generally, or in a particular state, and by what means each state may be best preserved: these questions remain to be considered.

In the first place we must assume as our starting-point 25 that in the many forms of government which have sprung up there has always been an acknowledgement of justice and proportionate equality, although mankind fail in attaining them, as indeed I have already explained.² Democracy, for example, arises out of the notion that those who are equal in any respect are equal in all respects; because men are equally free, they claim to be absolutely 30 equal. Oligarchy is based on the notion that those who are unequal in one respect are in all respects unequal; being unequal, that is, in property, they suppose themselves to be unequal absolutely. The democrats think that as they are equal they ought to be equal in all things; while the oligarchs, under the idea that they are un-

¹ Cp. iv. c. 2.

² iii. 1282^b 18-30, Cp. 1280^a 9 sqq.

equal, claim too much, which is one form of inequality.
35 All these forms of government have a kind of justice, but, tried by an absolute standard, they are faulty; and, therefore, both parties, whenever their share in the government does not accord with their preconceived ideas, stir up revolution. Those who excel in virtue have the
40 best right of all to rebel (for they alone can with reason
1301^b be deemed absolutely unequal),³ but then they are of all men the least inclined to do so.⁴ There is also a superiority which is claimed by men of rank; for they are thought noble because they spring from wealthy and virtuous ancestors.⁵ Here then, so to speak, are opened the
5 very springs and fountains of revolution; and hence arise two sorts of changes in governments; the one affecting the constitution, when men seek to change from an existing form into some other, for example, from democracy into oligarchy, and from oligarchy into democracy, or from either of them into constitutional government
10 or aristocracy, and conversely; the other not affecting the constitution, when, without disturbing the form of government, whether oligarchy, or monarchy, or any other, they try to get the administration into their own hands.⁶ Further, there is a question of degree; an oligarchy, for example, may become more or less oligarchi-
15 cal, and a democracy more or less democratical; and in like manner the characteristics of the other forms of government may be more or less strictly maintained. Or the revolution may be directed against a portion of the constitution only, e. g. the establishment or overthrow of a particular office: as at Sparta it is said that Lysander
20 attempted to overthrow the monarchy, and king Pausa-

³ Cp. iii. 1284^b 28-34.⁵ Cp. iv. 1294^a 21.⁴ Cp. 1304^b 4.⁶ Cp. iv. 1292^b 11.

nias,⁷ the ephoralty. At Epidamnus, too, the change was partial. For instead of phylarchs or heads of tribes, a council was appointed; but to this day the magistrates are the only members of the ruling class who are compelled to go to the Heliaea when an election takes place, 25 and the office of the single archon⁸ was another oligarchical feature. Everywhere inequality is a cause of revolution, but an inequality in which there is no proportion—for instance, a perpetual monarchy among equals; and always it is the desire of equality which rises in rebellion.

Now equality is of two kinds, numerical and proportional; by the first I mean sameness or equality in num- 30 ber or size; by the second, equality of ratios. For example, the excess of three over two is numerically equal to the excess of two over one; whereas four exceeds two in the same ratio in which two exceeds one, for two is the same part of four that one is of two, namely, the half. 35 As I was saying before,⁹ men agree that justice in the abstract is proportion, but they differ in that some think that if they are equal in any respect they are equal absolutely, others that if they are unequal in any respect they should be unequal in all. Hence there are two principal forms of government, democracy and oligarchy; for good 40 birth and virtue are rare, but wealth and numbers are 1302^a more common. In what city shall we find a hundred persons of good birth and of virtue? whereas the rich everywhere abound. That a state should be ordered, simply and wholly, according to either kind of equality, is not a good thing; the proof is the fact that such forms of 5 government never last. They are originally based on a mistake, and, as they begin badly, cannot fail to end badly. The inference is that both kinds of equality should

⁷ Cp. vii. 1333^b 34.

⁸ Cp. iii. 1287^a 7.

⁹ a26.

be employed; numerical in some cases, and proportionate in others.

Still democracy appears to be safer and less liable to revolution than oligarchy.¹⁰ For in oligarchies¹¹ there is the double danger of the oligarchs falling out among themselves and also with the people; but in democracies¹² there is only the danger of a quarrel with the oligarchs. No dissension worth mentioning arises among the people themselves. And we may further remark that a government which is composed of the middle class more nearly approximates to democracy than to oligarchy,¹³ and is the safest of the imperfect forms of government.

2 In considering how dissensions and political revolutions arise, we must first of all ascertain the beginnings and causes of them which affect constitutions generally. They may be said to be three in number; and we have
20 now to give an outline of each. We want to know (1) what is the feeling? (2) what are the motives of those who make them? (3) whence arise political disturbances and quarrels? The universal and chief cause of this revolutionary feeling has been already mentioned;¹³ viz.
25 the desire of equality, when men think that they are equal to others who have more than themselves; or, again, the desire of inequality and superiority, when conceiving themselves to be superior they think that they have not more but the same or less than their inferiors; pretensions which may and may not be just. In
30 feriors revolt in order that they may be equal, and equals that they may be superior. Such is the state of mind which creates revolutions. The motives for making them

¹⁰ Cp. iv. 1296^a 13.

¹² Cp. c. 5.

¹¹ Cp. c. 6.

¹³ 1301^a 33 sqq., ^b35 sqq.

are the desire of gain and honour, or the fear of dishonour and loss; the authors of them want to divert punishment or dishonour from themselves or their friends. The causes and reasons of revolutions, whereby men are 35 themselves affected in the way described, and about the things which I have mentioned, viewed in one way may be regarded as seven, and in another as more than seven. Two of them have been already noticed; ¹⁴ but they act in a different manner, for men are excited against one another by the love of gain and honour—not, as in the case which I have just supposed, in order to obtain them 40 for themselves, but at seeing others, justly or unjustly, 1302^b engrossing them. Other causes are insolence, fear, excessive predominance, contempt, disproportionate increase in some part of the state; causes of another sort are election intrigues, carelessness, neglect about trifles, dissimilarity of elements.

3 What share insolence and avarice have in creating 5 revolutions, and how they work, is plain enough. When the magistrates are insolent and grasping they conspire against one another and also against the constitution from which they derive their power, making their gains either at the expense of individuals or of the public. It is 10 evident, again, what an influence honour exerts and how it is a cause of revolution. Men who are themselves dishonoured and who see others obtaining honours rise in rebellion; the honour or dishonour when undeserved is unjust; and just when awarded according to merit. Again, superiority is a cause of revolution when one or 15 more persons have a power which is too much for the state and the power of the government; this is a condition of affairs out of which there arises a monarchy, or a fam-

ily oligarchy. And therefore, in some places, as at Athens and Argos, they have recourse to ostracism.¹⁵ But how much better to provide from the first that there should
 20 be no such pre-eminent individuals instead of letting them come into existence and then finding a remedy.

Another cause of revolution is fear. Either men have committed wrong, and are afraid of punishment, or they are expecting to suffer wrong and are desirous of anticipating their enemy. Thus at Rhodes the notables conspired against the people through fear of the suits that
 25 were brought against them.¹⁶ Contempt is also a cause of insurrection and revolution; for example, in oligarchies—when those who have no share in the state are the majority, they revolt, because they think that they are the stronger. Or, again, in democracies, the rich despise the disorder and anarchy of the state; at Thebes, for example, where, after the battle of Oenophyta, the bad
 30 administration of the democracy led to its ruin. At Megara the fall of the democracy was due to a defeat occasioned by disorder and anarchy. And at Syracuse the democracy aroused contempt before the tyranny of Gelo arose; at Rhodes, before the insurrection.

Political revolutions also spring from a disproportionate
 35 ate increase in any part of the state. For as a body is made up of many members, and every member ought to grow in proportion,¹⁷ that symmetry may be preserved; but loses its nature if the foot be four cubits long and the rest of the body two spans; and, should the abnormal increase be one of quality as well as of quantity,
 40 may even take the form of another animal: even so a state has many parts, of which some one may often grow
 1303* imperceptibly; for example, the number of poor in democracies and in constitutional states. And this dispro-

¹⁵ Cp. iii. 1284^a 17.

¹⁶ Cp. 1304^b 27.

¹⁷ Cp. iii. 1284^b 8.

portion may sometimes happen by an accident, as at Tarentum, from a defeat in which many of the notables were slain in a battle with the Iapygians just after the Persian War, the constitutional government in consequence becoming a democracy; or as was the case at Argos, where the Argives, after their army had been cut to pieces on the seventh day of the month by Cleomenes the Lacedaemonian, were compelled to admit to citizenship some of their perioeci; and at Athens, when, after frequent defeats of their infantry at the time of the Peloponnesian War, the notables were reduced in number, because the soldiers had to be taken from the roll of citizens. Revolutions arise from this cause as well, in democracies as in other forms of government, but not to so great an extent. When the rich grow numerous or properties increase, the form of government changes into an oligarchy or a government of families. Forms of government also change—sometimes even without revolution, owing to election contests, as at Heraea (where, instead of electing their magistrates, they took them by lot, because the electors were in the habit of choosing their own partisans); or owing to carelessness, when disloyal persons are allowed to find their way into the highest offices, as at Oreum, where, upon the accession of Heracleodorus to office, the oligarchy was overthrown, and changed by him into a constitutional and democratical government.

Again, the revolution may be facilitated by the slightness of the change; I mean that a great change may sometimes slip into the constitution through neglect of a small matter; at Ambracia, for instance, the qualification for office, small at first, was eventually reduced to nothing. For the Ambraciots thought that a small qualification was much the same as none at all.

- 25 Another cause of revolution is difference of races which do not at once acquire a common spirit; for a state is not the growth of a day, any more than it grows out of a multitude brought together by accident. Hence the reception of strangers in colonies, either at the time of their foundation or afterwards, has generally produced revolution; for example, the Achaeans who joined the
- 30 Troezenians in the foundation of Sybaris, becoming later the more numerous, expelled them; hence the curse fell upon Sybaris. At Thurii the Sybarites quarrelled with their fellow-colonists; thinking that the land belonged to them, they wanted too much of it and were driven out. At Byzantium the new colonists were detected in a conspiracy, and were expelled by force of arms; the people of Antissa, who had received the Chian
- 35 exiles, fought with them, and drove them out; and the Zancleans, after having received the Samians, were driven by them out of their own city. The citizens of Apollonia on the Euxine, after the introduction of a fresh body of colonists, had a revolution; the Syracusans, after
- 1303^b the expulsion of their tyrants, having admitted strangers and mercenaries to the rights of citizenship, quarrelled and came to blows; the people Amphipolis, having received Chalcidian colonists, were nearly all expelled by them.
- 5 Now, in oligarchies the masses make revolution under the idea that they are unjustly treated, because, as I said before,¹⁸ they are equals, and have not an equal share, and in democracies the notables revolt, because they are not equals, and yet have only an equal share.
- Again, the situation of cities is a cause of revolution when the country is not naturally adapted to preserve the unity of the state. For example, the Chytians at Cla-

zomenae did not agree with the people of the island; and the people of Colophon quarrelled with the Notians; at 10 Athens too, the inhabitants of the Piraeus are more democratic than those who live in the city. For just as in war the impediment of a ditch, though ever so small, may break a regiment, so every cause of difference, however slight, makes a breach in a city. The greatest opposition 15 is confessedly that of virtue and vice; next comes that of wealth and poverty; and there are other antagonistic elements, greater or less, of which one is this difference of place.

4 In revolutions the occasions may be trifling, but great interests are at stake. Even trifles are most important when they concern the rulers, as was the case of old at 20 Syracuse; for the Syracusan constitution was once changed by a love-quarrel of two young men, who were in the government. The story is that while one of them was away from home his beloved was gained over by his companion, and he to revenge himself seduced the other's wife. They then drew the members of the ruling class into their quarrel and so split all the people into portions. 25 We learn from this story that we should be on our guard against the beginnings of such evils, and should put an end to the quarrels of chiefs and mighty men. The mistake lies in the beginning—as the proverb says—'Well 30 begun is half done'; so an error at the beginning, though quite small, bears the same ratio to the errors in the other parts. In general, when the notables quarrel, the whole city is involved, as happened in Hestiaeae after the Persian War. The occasion was the division of an inheritance; one of two brothers refused to give an account of 35 their father's property and the treasure which he had found: so the poorer of the two quarrelled with him and

enlisted in his cause the popular party, the other, who was very rich, the wealthy classes.

At Delphi, again, a quarrel about a marriage was the
1304^a beginning of all the troubles which followed. In this case the bridegroom, fancying some occurrence to be of evil omen, came to the bride, and went away without taking her. Whereupon her relations, thinking that they were insulted by him, put some of the sacred treasure among his offerings while he was sacrificing, and then slew him, pretending that he had been robbing the temple. At Mytilene, too, a dispute about heiresses was the begin-
5 ning of many misfortunes, and led to the war with the Athenians in which Paches took their city. A wealthy citizen, named Timophanes, left two daughters; Dexander, another citizen, wanted to obtain them for his sons; but he was rejected in his suit, whereupon he stirred up a revolution, and instigated the Athenians (of whom he
10 was proxenus) to interfere. A similar quarrel about an heiress arose at Phocis between Mnaseas the father of Mnason, and Euthykrates the father of Onomarchus; this was the beginning of the Sacred War. A marriage-quarrel was also the cause of a change in the government of Epidamnus. A certain man betrothed his daughter to a
15 person whose father, having been made a magistrate, fined the father of the girl, and the latter, stung by the insult, conspired with the unenfranchised classes to overthrow the state.

Governments also change into oligarchy or into democracy or into a constitutional government because the magistrates, or some other section of the state, increase
20 in power or renown. Thus at Athens the reputation gained by the court of the Areopagus, in the Persian War, seemed to tighten the reins of government. On the

other hand, the victory of Salamis,¹⁹ which was gained by the common people who served in the fleet, and won for the Athenians the empire due to command of the sea, strengthened the democracy. At Argos, the notables, ²⁵ having distinguished themselves against the Lacedaemonians in the battle of Mantinea, attempted to put down the democracy. At Syracuse, the people, having been the chief authors of the victory in the war with the Athenians, changed the constitutional government into democracy. At Chalcis, the people, uniting with the nota- ³⁰ bles, killed Phoxus the tyrant, and then seized the government. At Ambracia,²⁰ the people, in like manner, having joined with the conspirators in expelling the tyrant Periander, transferred the government to themselves. And generally, it should be remembered that those who have secured power to the state, whether private citizens, or ³⁵ magistrates, or tribes, or any other part or section of the state, are apt to cause revolutions. For either envy of their greatness draws others into rebellion, or they themselves, in their pride of superiority, are unwilling to remain on a level with others.

Revolutions also break out when opposite parties, e. g. the rich and the people, are equally balanced, and there ^{1304*} is little or no middle class; for, if either party were manifestly superior, the other would not risk an attack upon them. And, for this reason, those who are eminent in virtue usually do not stir up insurrections, always a minority. Such are the beginnings and causes of the dis- ⁵ turbances and revolutions to which every form of government is liable.

Revolutions are effected in two ways, by force and by fraud. Force may be applied either at the time of making ¹⁰ the revolution or afterwards. Fraud, again, is of two

¹⁹ Cp. ii. 1274^a 12; viii. 1341^a 29.

²⁰ Cp. 1311^a 39.

kinds; for (1) sometimes the citizens are deceived into acquiescing in a change of government, and afterwards they are held in subjection against their will. This was what happened in the case of the Four Hundred, who deceived the people by telling them that the king would provide money for the war against the Lacedaemonians, 15 and, having cheated the people, still endeavoured to retain the government. (2) In other cases the people are persuaded at first, and afterwards, by a repetition of the persuasion, their goodwill and allegiance are retained. The revolutions which effect constitutions generally spring from the above-mentioned causes.²¹

5 And now, taking each constitution separately, we must see what follows from the principles already laid down.

20 Revolutions in democracies are generally caused by the intemperance of demagogues, who either in their private capacity lay information against rich men until they compel them to combine (for a common danger unites even the bitterest enemies), or coming forward in public stir up the people against them. The truth of this 25 remark is proved by a variety of examples. At Cos the democracy was overthrown because wicked demagogues arose, and the notables combined. At Rhodes the demagogues not only provided pay for the multitude, but prevented them from making good to the trierarchs the sums which had been expended by them; and they, in 30 consequence of the suits which were brought against them, were compelled to combine and put down the democracy.²² The democracy at Heraclea was overthrown shortly after the foundation of the colony by the injustice of the demagogues, which drove out the notables,

²¹ Cp. 1302^a 17.

²² Cp. 1302^b 23.

who came back in a body and put an end to the democracy. Much in the same manner the democracy at Megara²³ was overturned; there the demagogues drove out 35 many of the notables in order that they might be able to confiscate their property. At length the exiles, becoming numerous, returned, and, engaging and defeating the people, established the oligarchy. The same thing hap- 1305* pened with the democracy of Cyme, which was overthrown by Thrasymachus. And we may observe that in most states the changes have been of this character. For sometimes the demagogues, in order to curry favour with the people, wrong the notables and so force them to combine;—either they make a division of their property, or diminish their incomes by the imposition of public services, and sometimes they bring accusations 5 against the rich that they may have their wealth to confiscate.²⁴

Of old, the demagogue was also a general, and then democracies changed into tyrannies. Most of the ancient 10 tyrants were originally demagogues.²⁵ They are not so now, but they were then; and the reason is that they were generals and not orators, for oratory had not yet come into fashion. Whereas in our day, when the art of rhetoric has made such progress, the orators lead the people, but their ignorance of military matters prevents them from usurping power; at any rate instances to the contrary are few and slight. Tyrannies were more common for- 15 merly than now, for this reason also, that great power was placed in the hands of individuals; thus a tyranny arose at Miletus out of the office of the Prytanis, who had supreme authority in many important matters.²⁶ Moreover, in those days, when cities were not large, the peo-

²³ Cp. 1302^b 31, iv. 1300^a 17.

²⁵ Cp. 1310^b 14; Plato, *Rep.* viii. 565 D.

²⁴ Cp. 1309^a 14.

²⁶ Cp. 1310^b 20.

ple dwelt in the fields, busy at their work; and their
20 chiefs, if they possessed any military talent, seized the
opportunity, and winning the confidence of the masses
by professing their hatred of the wealthy, they succeeded
in obtaining the tyranny. Thus at Athens Peisistratus
led a faction against the men of the plain, and Theage-
nes at Megara slaughtered the cattle of the wealthy,
25 which he found by the river side, where they had put
them to graze in land not their own. Dionysius, again,
was thought worthy of the tyranny because he de-
nounced Daphnaeus and the rich; his enmity to the
notables won for him the confidence of the people.
Changes also take place from the ancient to the latest
30 form of democracy; for where there is a popular election
of the magistrates and no property qualification, the as-
pirants for office get hold of the people, and contrive at
last even to set them above the laws. A more or less
complete cure for this state of things is for the separate
tribes, and not the whole people, to elect the magistrates.
35 These are the principal causes of revolutions in de-
mocracies.

6 There are two patent causes of revolutions in oli-
garchies: (1) First, when the oligarchs oppress the
people, for then anybody is good enough to be their
champion, especially if he be himself a member of the
40 oligarchy, as Lygdamis at Naxos, who afterwards came
1305^b to be tyrant. But revolutions which commence outside
the governing class may be further subdivided. Some-
times, when the government is very exclusive, the revo-
lution is brought about by persons of the wealthy class
5 who are excluded, as happened at Massalia and Istros
and Heraclea, and other cities. Those who had no share
in the government created a disturbance, until first the

elder brothers, and then the younger, were admitted; for in some places father and son, in others elder and younger brothers, do not hold office together. At Mas- 10
salia the oligarchy became more like a constitutional government, but at Istros ended in a democracy, and at Heraclea was enlarged to 600. At Cnidos, again, the oligarchy underwent a considerable change. For the notables fell out among themselves, because only a few shared in the government; there existed among them the rule already mentioned, that father and son could not 15
hold office together, and, if there were several brothers, only the eldest was admitted. The people took advantage of the quarrel, and choosing one of the notables to be their leader, attacked and conquered the oligarchs, who were divided, and division is always a source of weakness. The city of Erythrae, too, in old times was ruled, and ruled well, by the Basilidae, but the people 20
took offence at the narrowness of the oligarchy and changed the constitution.

(2) Of internal causes of revolutions in oligarchies one is the personal rivalry of the oligarchs, which leads them to play the demagogue. Now, the oligarchical demagogue is of two sorts: either (a) he practises upon the oligarchs themselves (for, although the oligarchy are quite a small number, there may be a demagogue among 25
them, as at Athens Charicles' party won power by courting the Thirty, that of Phrynichus by courting the Four Hundred); or (b) the oligarchs may play the demagogue with the people. This was the case at Larissa, where the guardians of the citizens endeavoured to gain over the people because they were elected by them; and 30
such is the fate of all oligarchies in which the magistrates are elected, as at Abydos, not by the class to which they belong, but by the heavy-armed or by the people, al-

though they may be required to have a high qualification, or to be members of a political club; or, again, where the law-courts are composed of persons outside the government, the oligarchs flatter the people in order to obtain
35 a decision in their own favour, and so they change the constitution; this happened at Heraclea in Pontus. Again, oligarchies change whenever any attempt is made to narrow them; for then those who desire equal rights are compelled to call in the people. Changes in the oligarchy also occur when the oligarchs waste their private
40 property by extravagant living; for then they want to
1306^a innovate, and either try to make themselves tyrants, or install some one else in the tyranny, as Hipparinus did Dionysius at Syracuse, and as at Amphipolis²⁷ a man named Cleotimus introduced Chalcidian colonists, and when they arrived, stirred them up against the rich. For a like reason in Aegina the person who carried on the
5 negotiation with Chares endeavoured to revolutionize the state. Sometimes a party among the oligarchs try directly to create a political change; sometimes they rob the treasury, and then either the thieves or, as happened at Apollonia in Pontus, those who resist them in their thieving quarrel with the rulers. But an oligarchy which
10 is at unity with itself is not easily destroyed from within; of this we may see an example at Pharsalus, for there, although the rulers are few in number, they govern a large city, because they have a good understanding among themselves.

Oligarchies, again, are overthrown when another oligarchy is created within the original one, that is to say,
15 when the whole governing body is small and yet they do not all share in the highest offices. Thus at Elis the governing body was a small senate; and very few ever

²⁷ Cp 1303^b 2.

found their way into it, because the senators were only ninety in number, and were elected for life and out of certain families in a manner similar to the Lacedaemonian elders. Oligarchy is liable to revolutions alike in war and in peace; in war because, not being able to trust the people, the oligarchs are compelled to hire mercenaries, and the general who is in command of them often ends in becoming a tyrant, as Timophanes did at Corinth; or if there are more generals than one they make themselves into a company of tyrants. Sometimes the oligarchs, fearing this danger, give the people a share in the government because their services are necessary to them. And in time of peace, from mutual distrust, the two parties hand over the defence of the state to the army and to an arbiter between the two factions, who often ends the master of both. This happened at Larissa when Simos the Aleuad had the government, and at Abydos in the days of Iphiades and the political clubs. Revolutions also arise out of marriages or lawsuits which lead to the overthrow of one party among the oligarchs by another. Of quarrels about marriages I have already mentioned²⁸ some instances; another occurred at Eretria, where Diagoras overturned the oligarchy of the knights because he had been wronged about a marriage. A revolution at Heraclea, and another at Thebes, both arose out of decisions of law-courts upon a charge of adultery; in both cases the punishment was just, but executed in the spirit of party, at Heraclea upon Eurytion, and at Thebes upon Archias; for their enemies were jealous of them and so had them pilloried in the agora. Many oligarchies have been destroyed by some members of the ruling class taking offence at their excess-

²⁸ 1303^b 37—1304^a 17.

sive despotism; for example, the oligarchy at Cnidus and at Chios.

Changes of constitutional governments, and also of oligarchies which limit the office of counsellor, judge, or other magistrate to persons having a certain money qualification, often occur by accident. The qualification may have been originally fixed according to the circumstances of the time, in such a manner as to include in an oligarchy a few only, or in a constitutional government the middle class. But after a time of prosperity, whether arising from peace or some other good fortune, the same property becomes many times as valuable, and then everybody participates in every office; this happens
10 sometimes gradually and insensibly, and sometimes quickly. These are the causes of changes and revolutions in oligarchies.

We must remark generally, both of democracies and oligarchies, that they sometimes change, not into the opposite forms of government, but only into another variety of the same class; I mean to say, from those forms
20 of democracy and oligarchy which are regulated by law into those which are arbitrary, and conversely.

7 In aristocracies revolutions are stirred up when a few only share in the honours of the state; a cause which has been already shown²⁹ to affect oligarchies; for an aristocracy is a sort of oligarchy, and, like an oligarchy, is
25 the government of a few, although few not for the same reason; hence the two are often confounded. And revolutions will be most likely to happen, and must happen, when the mass of the people are of the high-spirited kind, and have a notion that they are as good as their rulers. Thus at Lacedaemon the so-called Partheniae, who were

the sons³⁰ of the Spartan peers, attempted a revolution, 30
and, being detected, were sent away to colonize Tarentum. Again, revolutions occur when great men who are at least of equal merit are dishonoured by those higher in office, as Lysander was by the kings of Sparta; or, when a brave man is excluded from the honours of the state, like Cinadon, who conspired against the Spartans in the 35
reign of Agesilaus; or, again, when some are very poor and others very rich, a state of society which is most often the result of war, as at Lacedaemon in the days of the Messenian War; this is proved from the poem of Tyrtaeus, entitled 'Good Order'; for he speaks of cer- 1307
tain citizens who were ruined by the war and wanted to have a redistribution of the land. Again, revolutions arise when an individual who is great, and might be greater, wants to rule alone, as, at Lacedaemon, Pausanias, who was general in the Persian War, or like Hanno at Carthage.

Constitutional governments and aristocracies are com- 5
monly overthrown owing to some deviation from justice in the constitution itself; the cause of the downfall is, in the former, the ill-mingling of the two elements, democracy and oligarchy; in the latter, of the three ele-
ments, democracy, oligarchy, and virtue, but especially 10
democracy and oligarchy. For to combine these is the endeavour of constitutional governments; and most of the so-called aristocracies have a like aim,³¹ but differ from politics in the mode of combination; hence some of them are more and some less permanent. Those which 15
incline more to oligarchy are called aristocracies, and those which incline to democracy constitutional governments. And therefore the latter are the safer of the two; for the greater the number, the greater the strength, and

³⁰ i. e. the illegitimate sons.

³¹ Cp. iv. c. 7.

when men are equal they are contented. But the rich, if
 20 the constitution gives them power, are apt to be insolent
 and avaricious; and, in general, whichever way the con-
 stitution inclines, in that direction it changes as either
 party gains strength, a constitutional government be-
 coming a democracy, an aristocracy an oligarchy. But
 the process may be reversed, and aristocracy may change
 into democracy. This happens when the poor, under the
 idea that they are being wronged, force the constitu-
 25 tional governments change into oligarchies. The only
 stable principle of government is equality according to
 proportion, and for every man to enjoy his own.

What I have just mentioned actually happened at
 Thurii,³² where the qualification for office, at first high,
 was therefore reduced, and the magistrates increased in
 number. The notables had previously acquired the whole
 30 of the land contrary to law; for the government tended
 to oligarchy, and they were able to encroach. . . . But
 the people, who had been trained by war, soon got the
 better of the guards kept by the oligarchs, until those
 who had too much gave up their land.

Again, since all aristocratical governments incline to
 35 oligarchy, the notables are apt to be grasping; thus at
 Lacedaemon, where property tends to pass into few
 hands,³³ the notables can do too much as they like, and
 are allowed to marry whom they please. The city of Locri
 was ruined by a marriage connexion with Dionysius, but
 such a thing could never have happened in a democracy,
 or in a well-balanced aristocracy.

40 I have already remarked that in all states revolutions
 1307^b are occasioned by trifles.³⁴ In aristocracies, above all,

³² Cp. 1303^a 31.

³⁴ 1302^b 4, 1303^a 20-25, 117.

³³ Cp. ii. 1270^a 18.

they are of a gradual and imperceptible nature. The citizens begin by giving up some part of the constitution, and so with greater ease the government change something else which is a little more important, until they have 5 undermined the whole fabric of the state. At Thurii there was a law that generals should only be re-elected after an interval of five years, and some young men who were popular with the soldiers of the guard for their military prowess, despising the magistrates and thinking that they would easily gain their purpose, wanted to abolish 10 this law and allow their generals to hold perpetual commands; for they well knew that the people would be glad enough to elect them. Whereupon the magistrates who had charge of these matters, and who are called councillors, at first determined to resist, but they afterwards consented, thinking that, if only this one law was 15 changed, no further inroad would be made on the constitution. But other changes soon followed which they in vain attempted to oppose; and the state passed into the hands of the revolutionists, who established a dynastic oligarchy.

All constitutions are overthrown either from within or from without; the latter, when there is some govern- 20 ment close at hand having an opposite interest, or at a distance, but powerful. This was exemplified in the old times of the Athenians and the Lacedaemonians; the Athenians everywhere put down the oligarchies, and the Lacedaemonians the democracies.³⁵

I have now explained what are the chief causes of revolutions and dissensions in states. 25

8 We have next to consider what means there are of preserving constitutions in general, and in particular

³⁵ Cp. iv. 1296^a 32.

cases. In the first place it is evident that if we know the causes which destroy constitutions, we also know the causes which preserve them; for opposites produce opposites, and destruction is the opposite of preservation.³⁶

30 In all well-tempered governments there is nothing which should be more jealously maintained than the spirit of obedience to law, more especially in small matters; for transgression creeps in unperceived and at last ruins the state, just as the constant recurrence of small expenses in time eats up a fortune. The expense does not
35 take place all at once, and therefore is not observed; the mind is deceived, as in the fallacy which says that 'if each part is little, then the whole is little'. And this is true in one way, but not in another, for the whole and the all are not little, although they are made up of littles.

In the first place, then, men should guard against the
40 beginning of change, and in the second place they should not rely upon the political devices of which I have already spoken³⁷ invented only to deceive the people, for they are proved by experience to be useless. Further, we note that oligarchies as well as aristocracies may last, not from any inherent stability in such forms of government,
1308^a 5 but because the rulers are on good terms both with the unenfranchised and with the governing classes, not maltreating any who are excluded from the government, but introducing into it the leading spirits among them.³⁸ They should never wrong the ambitious in a matter of
10 honour, or the common people in a matter of money; and they should treat one another and their fellow-citizens in a spirit of equality. The equality which the friends of democracy seek to establish for the multitude is not only just but likewise expedient among equals. Hence, if the

³⁶ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* v. 1129^a 13.

³⁸ Cp. vi. 1321^a 26.

³⁷ Cp. iv. 1297^a 13-38.

governing class are numerous, many democratic institu- 15
tions are useful; for example, the restriction of the ten-
ure of offices to six months, that all those who are of
equal rank may share in them. Indeed, equals or peers
when they are numerous become a kind of democracy,
and therefore demagogues are very likely to arise among
them, as I have already remarked.³⁹ The short tenure of
office prevents oligarchies and aristocracies from falling
into the hands of families; it is not easy for a person to
do any great harm when his tenure of office is short, 20
whereas long possession begets tyranny in oligarchies
and democracies. For the aspirants to tyranny are either
the principal men of the state, who in democracies are
demagogues and in oligarchies members of ruling houses,
or those who hold great offices, and have a long tenure
of them.⁴⁰

Constitutions are preserved when their destroyers are 25
at a distance, and sometimes also because they are near,
for the fear of them makes the government keep in hand
the constitution. Wherefore the ruler who has a care of
the constitution should invent terrors, and bring distant
dangers near, in order that the citizens may be on their
guard, and, like sentinels in a night-watch, never relax
their attention. He should endeavour too by help of the 30
laws to control the contentions and quarrels of the nota-
bles, and to prevent those who have not hitherto taken
part in them from catching the spirit of contention. No
ordinary man can discern the beginning of evil,⁴¹ but
only the true statesman.

As to the change produced in oligarchies and consti- 35
tutional governments⁴² by the alteration of the qualifi-
cation, when this arises, not out of any variation in the

³⁹ 1305^b 23 sqq.

⁴¹ Cp. 1303^b 17-31.

⁴⁰ Cp. 1305^a 7.

⁴² Cp. 1306^b 6-16.

qualification but only out of the increase of money, it is well to compare the general valuation of property with
40 that of past years, annually in those cities in which the
1308^b census is taken annually, and in larger cities every third or fifth year. If the whole is many times greater or many times less than when the ratings recognized by the constitution were fixed, there should be power given by law
5 to raise or lower the qualification as the amount is greater or less. Where this is not done a constitutional government passes into an oligarchy, and an oligarchy is narrowed to a rule of families; or in the opposite case constitutional government becomes democracy, and oligarchy either constitutional government or democracy.

10 It is a principle common to democracy, oligarchy, and every other form of government not to allow the disproportionate increase of any citizen, but to give moderate honour for a long time rather than great honour for a short time. For men are easily spoilt; not every one can
15 bear prosperity. But if this rule is not observed, at any rate the honours which are given all at once should be taken away by degrees and not all at once. Especially should the laws provide against any one having too much power, whether derived from friends or money; if
20 he has, he should be sent clean out of the country.⁴³ And since innovations creep in through the private life of individuals also, there ought to be a magistracy which will have an eye to those whose life is not in harmony with the government, whether oligarchy or democracy or any other. And for a like reason an increase of prosperity in any part of the state should be carefully
25 watched. The proper remedy for this evil is always to give the management of affairs and offices of state to opposite elements; such opposites are the virtuous and

⁴³ Cp. 1302^b 18; iii. 1284^a 17.

the many, or the rich and the poor. Another way is to combine the poor and the rich in one body, or to increase the middle class: thus an end will be put to the revolutions which arise from inequality. 30

But above all every state should be so administered and so regulated by law that its magistrates cannot possibly make money.⁴⁴ In oligarchies special precautions should be used against this evil. For the people do not take any great offence at being kept out of the government—indeed they are rather pleased than otherwise at 35 having leisure for their private business—but what irritates them is to think that their rulers are stealing the public money; then they are doubly annoyed; for they lose both honour and profit. If office brought no profit, then and then only could democracy and aristocracy be combined; for both notables and people might have their 40 wishes gratified. All would be able to hold office, which 1309* is the aim of democracy, and the notables would be magistrates, which is the aim of aristocracy. And this result may be accomplished when there is no possibility of making money out of the offices; for the poor will not want to have them when there is nothing to be gained 5 from them—they would rather be attending to their own concerns; and the rich, who do not want money from the public treasury, will be able to take them; and so the poor will keep to their work and grow rich, and the notables will not be governed by the lower class. In order to avoid peculation of the public money, the trans- 10 fer of the revenue should be made at a general assembly of the citizens, and duplicates of the accounts deposited with the different brotherhoods, companies, and tribes. And honours should be given by law to magistrates who have the reputation of being incorruptible. In democ-

⁴⁴ Cp. 1316^a 39.

15 racies the rich should be spared; not only should their property not be divided, but their incomes also, which in some states are taken from them imperceptibly, should be protected. It is a good thing to prevent the wealthy citizens, even if they are willing, from undertaking expensive and useless public services, such as the giving of choruses, torch-races, and the like. In an oligarchy, 20 on the other hand, great care should be taken of the poor, and lucrative offices should go to them; if any of the wealthy classes insult them, the offender should be punished more severely than if he had wronged one of his own class. Provision should be made that estates 25 pass by inheritance and not by gift, and no person should have more than one inheritance; for in this way properties will be equalized, and more of the poor rise to competency. It is also expedient both in a democracy and in an oligarchy to assign to those who have less share in the government (i. e. to the rich in a democracy and to the 30 poor in an oligarchy) an equality or preference in all but the principal offices of state. The latter should be entrusted chiefly or only to members of the governing class.

9 There are three qualifications required in those who have to fill the highest offices—(1) first of all, loyalty to the established constitution; (2) the greatest administrative capacity; (3) virtue and justice of the kind 35 proper to each form of government; for, if what is just is not the same in all governments, the quality of justice must also differ. There may be a doubt, however, when all these qualities do not meet in the same person, how the selection is to be made; suppose, for example, a good 40 the selection is to be made; suppose, for example, a good 1309^b general is a bad man and not a friend to the constitution, and another man is loyal and just, which should

we choose? In making the election ought we not to consider two points? what qualities are common, and what are rare. Thus in the choice of a general, we should regard his skill rather than his virtue; for few have military skill, but many have virtue. In any office of trust or stewardship, on the other hand, the opposite rule should be observed; for more virtue than ordinary is required in the holder of such an office, but the necessary knowledge is of a sort which all men possess.

It may, however, be asked what a man wants with virtue if he have political ability and is loyal, since these two qualities alone will make him do what is for the public interest. But may not men have both of them and yet be deficient in self-control? If, knowing and loving their own interests, they do not always attend to them, may they not be equally negligent of the interests of the public?

Speaking generally, we may say that whatever legal enactments are held to be for the interest of various constitutions, all these preserve them. And the great preserving principle is the one which has been repeatedly mentioned⁴⁵—to have a care that the loyal citizens should be stronger than the disloyal. Neither should we forget the mean, which at the present day is lost sight of in perverted forms of government; for many practices which appear to be democratical are the ruin of democracies, and many which appear to be oligarchical are the ruin of oligarchies. Those who think that all virtue is to be found in their own party principles push matters to extremes; they do not consider that disproportion destroys a state. A nose which varies from the ideal of straightness to a hook or snub may still be of good shape and agreeable to the eye; but if the excess be very great,

⁴⁵ iv. 1296^b 15, vi. 1320^a 14, Cp. ii. 1270^b 21 sq., iv. 1294^b 37.

all symmetry is lost, and the nose at last ceases to be a nose at all on account of some excess in one direction or defect in the other; and this is true of every other part
30 of the human body. The same law of proportion equally holds in states. Oligarchy or democracy, although a departure from the most perfect form, may yet be a good enough government, but if any one attempts to push the principles of either to an extreme, he will begin by spoiling the government and end by having none at all.
35 Wherefore the legislator and the statesman ought to know what democratical measures save and what destroy a democracy, and what oligarchical measures save or destroy an oligarchy. For neither the one nor the other can exist or continue to exist unless both rich and poor are included in it. If equality of property is introduced,
40 the state must of necessity take another form; for when
1310^a by laws carried to excess one or other element in the state is ruined, the constitution is ruined.

There is an error common both to oligarchies and to democracies:—in the latter the demagogues, when the multitude are above the law, are always cutting the city
5 in two by quarrels with the rich, whereas they should always profess to be maintaining their cause; just as in oligarchies the oligarchs should profess to maintain the cause of the people, and should take oaths the opposite of those which they now take. For there are cities in which they swear—‘I will be an enemy to the people, and will devise all the harm against them which I can’;
10 but they ought to exhibit and to entertain the very opposite feeling; in the form of their oath there should be an express declaration—‘I will do no wrong to the people.’

But of all the things which I have mentioned that which most contributes to the permanence of constitu-

tions is the adaptation of education to the form of government,⁴⁶ and yet in our own day this principle is universally neglected. The best laws, though sanctioned 15 by every citizen of the state, will be of no avail unless the young are trained by habit and education in the spirit of the constitution, if the laws are democratical, democratically, or oligarchically, if the laws are oligarchical. For there may be a want of self-discipline in states as well as in individuals. Now, to have been educated in the spirit of the constitution is not to perform the actions 20 in which oligarchs or democrats delight, but those by which the existence of an oligarchy or of a democracy is made possible. Whereas among ourselves the sons of the ruling class in an oligarchy live in luxury,⁴⁷ but the sons of the poor are hardened by exercise and toil, and hence they are both more inclined and better able to make a revolution.⁴⁸ And in democracies of the more 25 extreme type there has arisen a false idea of freedom which is contradictory to the true interests of the state. For two principles are characteristic of democracy, the government of the majority and freedom. Men think that what is just is equal; and that equality is the su- 30 premacy of the popular will; and that freedom means the doing what a man likes. In such democracies every one lives as he pleases, or in the words of Euripides, 'according to his fancy'. But this is all wrong; men should not think it slavery to live according to the rule 35 of the constitution; for it is their salvation.

I have now discussed generally the causes of the revolution and destruction of states, and the means of their preservation and continuance.

⁴⁶ Cp. viii. 1337^a 14.

⁴⁸ Cp. Pl. *Rep.* viii. 556 D.

⁴⁷ Cp. iv. 1295^b 17.

10 I have still to speak of monarchy, and the causes of
 40 its destruction and preservation. What I have said al-
 1310^b ready respecting forms of constitutional government ap-
 plies almost equally to royal and to tyrannical rule. For
 royal rule is of the nature of an aristocracy, and a tyranny
 is a compound of oligarchy and democracy in their most
 5 extreme forms; it is therefore most injurious to its sub-
 jects, being made up of two evil forms of government,
 and having the perversions and errors of both. These
 two forms of monarchy are contrary in their very origin.
 The appointment of a king is the resource of the better
 10 classes against the people, and he is elected by them out
 of their own number, because either he himself or his
 family excel in virtue and virtuous actions; whereas a
 tyrant is chosen from the people to be their protector
 against the notables, and in order to prevent them from
 being injured. History shows that almost all tyrants
 have been demagogues who gained the favour of the
 15 people by their accusation of the notables.⁴⁹ At any rate
 this was the manner in which the tyrannies arose in the
 days when cities had increased in power. Others which
 were older originated in the ambition of kings wanting
 to overstep the limits of their hereditary power and be-
 come despots. Others again grew out of the class which
 20 were chosen to be chief magistrates; for in ancient times
 the people who elected them gave the magistrates,
 whether civil or religious, a long tenure. Others arose out
 of the custom which oligarchies had of making some
 individual supreme over the highest offices. In any of
 these ways an ambitious man had no difficulty, if he de-
 25 sired, in creating a tyranny, since he had the power in
 his hands already, either as king or as one of the officers
 of state.⁵⁰ Thus Pheidon at Argos and several others

⁴⁹ Cp. 1305^a 8; Plato, *Rep.* viii. 565 D.

⁵⁰ Cp. 1305^a 15.

were originally kings, and ended by becoming tyrants; Phalaris, on the other hand, and the Ionian tyrants, acquired the tyranny by holding great offices. Whereas Panaetius at Leontini, Cypselus at Corinth, Peisistratus 30 at Athens, Dionysius at Syracuse, and several others who afterwards became tyrants, were at first demagogues.

And so, as I was saying,⁵¹ royalty ranks with aristocracy, for it is based upon merit, whether of the individual or of his family, or on benefits conferred,⁵² or on these claims with power added to them. For all who have obtained this honour have benefited, or had in their power 35 to benefit, states and nations; some, like Codrus, have prevented the state from being enslaved in war; others, like Cyrus, have given their country freedom, or have settled or gained a territory, like the Lacedaemonian, Macedonian, and Molossian kings. The idea of a king 40 is to be a protector of the rich against unjust treatment, 1311^a of the people against insult and oppression. Whereas a tyrant, as has often been repeated,⁵³ has no regard to any public interest, except as conducive to his private ends; his aim is pleasure, the aim of a king, honour. Wherefore also in their desires they differ; the tyrant is 5 desirous of riches, the king, of what brings honour. And the guards of a king are citizens, but of a tyrant mercenaries.⁵⁴

That tyranny has all the vices both of democracy and oligarchy is evident. As of oligarchy so of tyranny, the 10 end is wealth; (for by wealth only can the tyrant maintain either his guard or his luxury). Both mistrust the people, and therefore deprive them of their arms. Both agree too in injuring the people and driving them out of

⁵¹ l. 2 sq.

⁵³ iii. 1279^b 6 sq., iv. 1295^a 19.

⁵² Cp. iii. 1285^b 6.

⁵⁴ Cp. iii. 1285^a 24.

15 the city and dispersing them. From democracy tyrants have borrowed the art of making war upon the notables and destroying them secretly or openly, or of exiling them because they are rivals and stand in the way of their power; and also because plots against them are
20 contrived by men of this class, who either want to rule or to escape subjection. Hence Periander advised Thrasylus⁵⁵ by cutting off the tops of the tallest ears of corn, meaning that he must always put out of the way the citizens who overtop the rest. And so, as I have already intimated,⁵⁶ the beginnings of change are the same in monarchies as in forms of constitutional gov-
25 ernment; subjects attack their sovereigns out of fear or contempt, or because they have been unjustly treated by them. And of injustice, the most common form is insult, another is confiscation of property.

The ends sought by conspiracies against monarchies, whether tyrannies or royalties, are the same as the ends
30 sought by conspiracies against other forms of government. Monarchs have great wealth and honour, which are objects of desire to all mankind. The attacks are made sometimes against their lives, sometimes against the office; where the sense of insult is the motive, against their lives. Any sort of insult (and there are many) may stir up anger, and when men are angry, they commonly
35 act out of revenge, and not from ambition. For example, the attempt made upon the Peisistratidae arose out of the public dishonour offered to the sister of Harmodius and the insult to himself. He attacked the tyrant for his sister's sake, and Aristogeiton joined in the attack for the sake of Harmodius. A conspiracy was also formed
40 against Periander, the tyrant of Ambracia, because, 1311^b when drinking with a favourite youth, he asked him

⁵⁵ Cp. 1284^a 26.

⁵⁶ 1310^a 40 sqq.

whether by this time he was not with child by him. Philip, too, was attacked by Pausanias because he permitted him to be insulted by Attalus and his friends, and Amyntas the little, by Derdas, because he boasted of having enjoyed his youth. Evagoras of Cyprus, again, 5 was slain by the eunuch to revenge an insult; for his wife had been carried off by Evagoras's son. Many conspiracies have originated in shameful attempts made by sovereigns on the persons of their subjects. Such was the attack of Crataeas upon Archelaus; he had always hated the connexion with him, and so, when Archelaus, having promised him one of his two daughters in marriage, did 10 not give him either of them, but broke his word and married the elder to the king of Elymeia, when he was hard pressed in a war against Sirrhas and Arrhabaeus, and the younger to his own son Amyntas, under the idea that Amyntas would then be less likely to quarrel with his son by Cleopatra—Crataeas made this slight a pretext 13 for attacking Archelaus, though even a less reason would have sufficed, for the real cause of the estrangement was the disgust which he felt at his connection with the king. And from a like motive Hellanocrates of Larissa conspired with him; for when Archelaus, who was his lover, did not fulfil his promise of restoring him to his country, he thought that the connection between them had originated, not in affection, but in the wantonness of power. Pytho, too, and Heracleides of Aenos, slew Cotys in 20 order to avenge their father, and Adamas revolted from Cotys in revenge for the wanton outrage which he had committed in mutilating him when a child.

Many, too, irritated at blows inflicted on the person which they deemed an insult, have either killed or at- 23 tempted to kill officers of state and royal princes by whom they have been injured. Thus, at Mytilene, Mega-

cles and his friends attacked and slew the Pentilidae, as they were going about and striking people with clubs. At a later date Smerdis, who had been beaten and torn
 10 away from his wife by Pentilus, slew him. In the conspiracy against Archelaus, Decamnichus stimulated the fury of the assassins and led the attack; he was enraged because Archelaus had delivered him to Euripides to be scourged; for the poet had been irritated at some remark made by Decamnichus on the foulness of his breath.
 15 Many other examples might be cited of murders and conspiracies which have arisen from similar causes.

Fear is another motive which, as we have said,⁵⁷ has caused conspiracies as well in monarchies as in more popular forms of government. Thus Artapanes conspired against Xerxes and slew him, fearing that he would be accused of hanging Darius against his orders—he having been under the impression that Xerxes would forget what he had said in the middle of a meal, and that the offence would be forgiven.

40 Another motive is contempt, as in the case of Sar-
 1312^a danapalus, whom some one saw carding wool with his women, if the story-tellers say truly; and the tale may be true, if not of him, of some one else.⁵⁸ Dion attacked
 5 the younger Dionysius because he despised him, and saw that he was equally despised by his own subjects, and that he was always drunk. Even the friends of a tyrant will sometimes attack him out of contempt; for the confidence which he reposes in them breeds con-
 10 tempt, and they think that they will not be found out. The expectation of success is likewise a sort of contempt; the assailants are ready to strike, and think nothing of the danger, because they seem to have the power in their hands. Thus generals of armies attack mon-

⁵⁷ Cp. 1302^b 2, 21, 1311^a 25.

⁵⁸ Cp. i. 1259^a 7.

archs; as, for example, Cyrus attacked Astyages, despising the effeminacy of his life, and believing that his power was worn out. Thus again, Seuthes the Thracian conspired against Amadocus, whose general he was.

And sometimes men are actuated by more than one 15 motive, like Mithridates, who conspired against Ariobarzanes, partly out of contempt and partly from the love of gain.

Bold natures, placed by their sovereigns in a high military position, are most likely to make the attempt in the expectation of success; for courage is emboldened 20 by power, and the union of the two inspires them with the hope of an easy victory.

Attempts of which the motive is ambition arise in a different way as well as in those already mentioned. There are men who will not risk their lives in the hope of 25 gains and honours however great, but who nevertheless regard the killing of a tyrant simply as an extraordinary action which will make them famous and honourable in the world; they wish to acquire, not a kingdom, but a 30 name. It is rare, however, to find such men; he who would kill a tyrant must be prepared to lose his life if he fail. He must have the resolution of Dion, who, when he made war upon Dionysius, took with him very few 35 troops, saying 'that whatever measure of success he might attain would be enough for him, even if he were to die the moment he landed; such a death would be welcome to him'. But this is a temper to which few can attain.

Once more, tyrannies, like all other governments, are 40 destroyed from without by some opposite and more 1312^b powerful form of government. That such a government will have the will to attack them is clear; for the two are opposed in principle; and all men, if they can, do

what they will. Democracy is antagonistic to tyranny, on the principle of Hesiod, 'Potter hates Potter', because
5 they are nearly akin, for the extreme form of democracy is tyranny; and royalty and aristocracy are both alike opposed to tyranny, because they are constitutions of a different type. And therefore the Lacedaemonians put down most of the tyrannies, and so did the Syracusans during the time when they were well governed.

Again, tyrannies are destroyed from within, when the
10 reigning family are divided among themselves, as that of Gelo was, and more recently that of Dionysius; in the case of Gelo because Thrasybulus, the brother of Hiero, flattered the son of Gelo and led him into excesses in order that he might rule in his name. Whereupon the family got together a party to get rid of Thrasybulus and
15 save the tyranny; but those of the people who conspired with them seized the opportunity and drove them all out. In the case of Dionysius, Dion, his own relative, attacked and expelled him with the assistance of the people; he afterwards perished himself.

There are two chief motives which induce men to
20 attack tyrannies—hatred and contempt. Hatred of tyrants is inevitable, and contempt is also a frequent cause of their destruction. Thus we see that most of those who have acquired, have retained their power, but those who have inherited,⁵⁹ have lost it, almost at once; for, living in luxurious ease, they have become contemptible, and
25 offer many opportunities to their assailants. Anger, too, must be included under hatred, and produces the same effects. It is oftentimes even more ready to strike—the angry are more impetuous in making an attack, for they do not follow rational principle. And men are very apt to give way to their passions when they are insulted. To

⁵⁹ Cp. Plato, *Laws*, iii. 695.

this cause is to be attributed the fall of the Peisistratidae 30
and of many others. Hatred is more reasonable, for anger
is accompanied by pain, which is an impediment to reason,
whereas hatred is painless.⁶⁰

In a word, all the causes which I have mentioned⁶¹
as destroying the last and most unmixed form of oligarchy, 35
and the extreme form of democracy, may be
assumed to affect tyranny; indeed the extreme forms of
both are only tyrannies distributed among several persons.
Kingly rule is little affected by external causes,
and is therefore lasting; it is generally destroyed from 40
within. And there are two ways in which the destruction
may come about; (1) when the members of the royal 1313^a
family quarrel among themselves, and (2) when the
kings attempt to administer the state too much after the
fashion of a tyranny, and to extend their authority contrary
to the law. Royalties do not now come into existence;
where such forms of government arise, they are rather
monarchies or tyrannies. For the rule of a king is 5
over voluntary subjects, and he is supreme in all important
matters; but in our own day men are more upon an equality,
and no one is so immeasurably superior to others as to represent
adequately the greatness and dignity of the office. Hence
mankind will not, if they can help, endure it, and any one who
obtains power by force 10
or fraud is at once thought to be a tyrant. In hereditary
monarchies a further cause of destruction is the fact that
kings often fall into contempt, and, although possessing
not tyrannical power, but only royal dignity, are apt to
outrage others. Their overthrow is then readily effected;
for there is an end to the king when his subjects do not 15
want to have him, but the tyrant lasts, whether they like
him or not.

⁶⁰ Cp. *Rhetoric*, ii. 1382^a 12.

⁶¹ 1302^b 25-33, 1304^b 20-1306^b 21.

The destruction of monarchies is to be attributed to these and the like causes.

- 11 And they are preserved, to speak generally, by the opposite causes; or, if we consider them separately, (1)
20 royalty is preserved by the limitation of its powers. The more restricted the functions of kings, the longer their power will last unimpaired; for then they are more moderate and not so despotic in their ways; and they are less envied by their subjects. This is the reason why the kingly office has lasted so long among the Molossians.
25 And for a similar reason it has continued among the Lacedaemonians, because there it was always divided between two, and afterwards further limited by Theopompus in various respects, more particularly by the establishment of the Ephoralty. He diminished the power of the kings, but established on a more lasting basis the kingly office, which was thus made in a certain sense not
30 less, but greater. There is a story that when his wife once asked him whether he was not ashamed to leave to his sons a royal power which was less than he had inherited from his father, 'No indeed,' he replied, 'for the power which I leave to them will be more lasting.'

- As to (2) tyrannies, they are preserved in two most
35 opposite ways. One of them is the old traditional method in which most tyrants administer their government. Of such arts Periander of Corinth is said to have been the great master, and many similar devices may be gathered from the Persians in the administration of their government. There are firstly the prescriptions mentioned some distance back,⁶² for the preservation of a tyranny, in
40 so far as this is possible; viz. that the tyrant should lop off those who are too high; he must put to death men of

spirit; he must not allow common meals, clubs, education, and the like; he must be upon his guard against anything which is likely to inspire either courage or confidence among his subjects; he must prohibit literary assemblies or other meetings for discussion, and he must take every means to prevent people from knowing one another (for acquaintance begets mutual confidence). 5 Further, he must compel all persons staying in the city to appear in public and live at his gates; then he will know what they are doing: if they are always kept under, they will learn to be humble. In short, he should practise these and the like Persian and barbaric arts, which all have the same object. A tyrant should also endeavour to know 10 what each of his subjects says or does, and should employ spies, like the 'female detectives' at Syracuse, and the eavesdroppers whom Hiero was in the habit of sending to any place of resort or meeting; for the fear of informers 15 prevents people from speaking their minds, and if they do, they are more easily found out. Another art of the tyrant is to sow quarrels among the citizens; friends should be embroiled with friends, the people with the notables, and the rich with one another. Also he should impoverish his subjects; he thus provides against the maintenance of a guard by the citizens, and the people, 20 having to keep hard at work, are prevented from conspiring. The Pyramids of Egypt afford an example of this policy; also the offerings of the family of Cypselus, and the building of the temple of Olympian Zeus by the Peisistratidae, and the great Polycratean monuments at Samos; all these works were alike intended to occupy the people and keep them poor. Another practice of 25 tyrants is to multiply taxes, after the manner of Dionysius at Syracuse, who contrived that within five years his subjects should bring into the treasury their whole

property. The tyrant is also fond of making war in order that his subjects may have something to do and be always
30 in want of a leader. And whereas the power of a king is preserved by his friends, the characteristic of a tyrant is to distrust his friends, because he knows that all men want to overthrow him, and they above all have the power.

Again, the evil practices of the last and worst form of democracy⁶³ are all found in tyrannies. Such are the power given to women in their families in the hope that they will inform against their husbands, and the licence which is allowed to slaves in order that they may betray
35 their masters; for slaves and women do not conspire against tyrants; and they are of course friendly to tyrannies and also to democracies, since under them they have a good time. For the people too would fain be a monarch, and therefore by them, as well as by the tyrant, the flatterer is held in honour; in democracies he is the demagogue; and the tyrant also has those who associate with
40 him in a humble spirit, which is a work of flattery.
1314^a

Hence tyrants are always fond of bad men, because they love to be flattered, but no man who has the spirit of a freeman in him will lower himself by flattery; good men love others, or at any rate do not flatter them. Moreover, the bad are useful for bad purposes; 'nail knocks
5 out nail', as the proverb says. It is characteristic of a tyrant to dislike every one who has dignity or independence; he wants to be alone in his glory, but any one who claims a like dignity or asserts his independence encroaches upon his prerogative, and is hated by him as
10 an enemy to his power. Another mark of a tyrant is that he likes foreigners better than citizens, and lives with

⁶³ Cp. vi. 1319^b 27.

them and invites them to his table; for the one are enemies, but the others enter into no rivalry with him.

Such are the notes of the tyrant and the arts by which he preserves his power; there is no wickedness too great for him. All that we have said may be summed up under three heads, which answer to the three aims of the tyrant. 15 These are, (1) the humiliation of his subjects; he knows that a mean-spirited man will not conspire against anybody: (2) the creation of mistrust among them; for a tyrant is not overthrown until men begin to have confidence in one another; and this is the reason why tyrants are at war with the good; they are under the idea that their power is endangered by them, not only because 20 they will not be ruled despotically, but also because they are loyal to one another, and to other men, and do not inform against one another or against other men: (3) the tyrant desires that his subjects shall be incapable of action, for no one attempts what is impossible, and they will not attempt to overthrow a tyranny, if they are powerless. Under these three heads the whole policy of 25 a tyrant may be summed up, and to one or other of them all his ideas may be referred: (1) he sows distrust among his subjects; (2) he takes away their power; (3) he humbles them.

This then is one of the two methods by which tyrannies are preserved; and there is another which proceeds upon an almost opposite principle of action. The nature of this latter method may be gathered from a comparison of the causes which destroy kingdoms, for as one mode of destroying kingly power is to make the office of king more tyrannical, so the salvation of a tyranny is to make it more like the rule of a king. But of one thing 35 the tyrant must be careful; he must keep power enough to rule over his subjects, whether they like him or not,

for if he once gives this up he gives up his tyranny. But though power must be retained as the foundation, in all
40 else the tyrant should act or appear to act in the character of a king. In the first place he should pretend a care of
1314^b the public revenues, and not waste money in making presents of a sort at which the common people get excited when they see their hard-won earnings snatched from them and lavished on courtesans and strangers and
5 artists. He should give an account of what he receives and of what he spends (a practice which has been adopted by some tyrants); for then he will seem to be a steward of the public rather than a tyrant; nor need he fear that, while he is the lord of the city, he will ever be in want of money. Such a policy is at all events much more advantageous for the tyrant when he goes from
10 home, than to leave behind him a hoard, for then the garrison who remain in the city will be less likely to attack his power; and a tyrant, when he is absent from home, has more reason to fear the guardians of his treasure than the citizens, for the one accompany him, but the others remain behind. In the second place, he should
15 be seen to collect taxes and to require public services only for state purposes, and that he may form a fund in case of war, and generally he ought to make himself the guardian and treasurer of them, as if they belonged, not to him, but to the public. He should appear, not harsh, but dignified, and when men meet him they should look upon him with reverence, and not with fear. Yet it is
20 hard for him to be respected if he inspires no respect, and therefore whatever virtues he may neglect, at least he should maintain the character of a great soldier, and produce the impression that he is one. Neither he nor any of his associates should ever be guilty of the least offence against modesty towards the young of either sex

who are his subjects, and the women of his family should 25
observe a like self-control towards other women; the insolence of women has ruined many tyrannies. In the indulgence of pleasures he should be the opposite of our modern tyrants, who not only begin at dawn and pass whole days in sensuality, but want other men to see 30
them, that they may admire their happy and blessed lot. In these things a tyrant should if possible be moderate, or at any rate should not parade his vices to the world; for a drunken and drowsy tyrant is soon despised and attacked; not so he who is temperate and wide 35
awake. His conduct should be the very reverse of nearly everything which has been said before⁶⁴ about tyrants. He ought to adorn and improve his city, as though he were not a tyrant, but the guardian of the state. Also he should appear to be particularly earnest in the service of the Gods; for if men think that a ruler is religious and 40
has a reverence for the Gods, they are less afraid of 1315^a suffering injustice at his hands, and they are less disposed to conspire against him, because they believe him to have the very Gods fighting on his side. At the same time his religion must not be thought foolish. And he should honour men of merit, and make them think that they 5
would not be held in more honour by the citizens if they had a free government. The honour he should distribute himself, but the punishment should be inflicted by officers and courts of law. It is a precaution which is taken by all monarchs not to make one person great; but if one, then two or more should be raised, that they may look sharply after one another. If after all some one has 10
to be made great, he should not be a man of bold spirit; for such dispositions are ever most inclined to strike. And if any one is to be deprived of his power, let it be

diminished gradually, not taken from him all at once.⁶⁵

- 15 The tyrant should abstain from all outrage; in particular from personal violence and from wanton conduct towards the young. He should be especially careful of his behaviour to men who are lovers of honour; for as the lovers of money are offended when their property is
20 touched, so are the lovers of honour and the virtuous when their honour is affected. Therefore a tyrant ought either not to commit such acts at all; or he should be thought only to employ fatherly correction, and not to trample upon others—and his acquaintance with youth should be supposed to arise from affection, and not from the insolence of power, and in general he should compensate the appearance of dishonour by the increase of honour.

- 25 Of those who attempt assassination they are the most dangerous, and require to be most carefully watched, who do not care to survive, if they effect their purpose. Therefore special precaution should be taken about any who think that either they or those for whom they care have been insulted; for when men are led away by passion to assault others they are regardless of themselves. As Heracleitus says, 'It is difficult to fight against anger;
30 for a man will buy revenge with his soul.'

- And whereas states consist of two classes, of poor men and of rich, the tyrant should lead both to imagine that
35 they are preserved and prevented from harming one another by his rule, and whichever of the two is stronger he should attach to his government; for, having this advantage, he has no need either to emancipate slaves or to disarm the citizens; either party added to the force which he already has, will make him stronger than his assailants.

But enough of these details;—what should be the 40
general policy of the tyrant is obvious. He ought to show
himself to his subjects in the light, not of a tyrant, but
of a steward and a king. He should not appropriate what 1315^b
is theirs, but should be their guardian; he should be
moderate, not extravagant in his way of life; he should
win the notables by companionship, and the multitude
by flattery. For then his rule will of necessity be nobler
and happier, because he will rule over better men⁶⁶ whose
spirits are not crushed, over men to whom he himself is
not an object of hatred, and of whom he is not afraid.
His power too will be more lasting. His disposition will
be virtuous, or at least half virtuous; and he will not be 10
wicked, but half wicked only.

12 Yet no forms of government are so short-lived as
oligarchy and tyranny. The tyranny which lasted long-
est was that of Orthagoras and his sons at Sicyon; this
continued for a hundred years. The reason was that they
treated their subjects with moderation, and to a great 15
extent observed the laws; and in various ways gained
the favour of the people by the care which they took of
them. Cleisthenes, in particular, was respected for his
military ability. If report may be believed, he crowned
the judge who decided against him in the games; and,
as some say, the sitting statue in the Agora of Sicyon is 20
the likeness of this person. (A similar story is told of
Peisistratus, who is said on one occasion to have allowed
himself to be summoned and tried before the Areopagus.)

Next in duration to the tyranny of Orthagoras was
that of the Cypselidae at Corinth, which lasted seventy-
three years and six months: Cypselus reigned thirty 25
years, Periander forty and a half, and Psammetichus the

⁶⁶ Cp. i. 1254^a 25.

son of Gorgus three. Their continuance was due to similar causes: Cypselus was a popular man, who during the whole time of his rule never had a body-guard; and Periander, although he was a tyrant, was a great soldier. Third in duration was the rule of the Peisistratidae at
 30 Athens, but it was interrupted; for Peisistratus was twice driven out, so that during three and thirty years he reigned only seventeen; and his sons reigned eighteen—altogether thirty-five years. Of other tyrannies, that of Hiero and Gelo at Syracuse was the most lasting.
 35 Even this, however, was short, not more than eighteen years in all; for Gelo continued tyrant for seven years, and died in the eighth; Hiero reigned for ten years, and Thrasybulus was driven out in the eleventh month. In fact, tyrannies generally have been of quite short duration.

40 I have now gone through almost all the causes by which constitutional governments and monarchies are
 1316^a either destroyed or preserved.

In the *Republic* of Plato,⁶⁷ Socrates treats of revolutions, but not well, for he mentions no cause of change which peculiarly affects the first, or perfect state. He only says that the cause is that nothing is abiding, but
 5 all things change in a certain cycle; and that the origin of the change consists in those numbers 'of which 4 and 3, married with 5, furnish two harmonies'—(he means when the number of this figure becomes solid); he conceives that nature at certain times produces bad men who will not submit to education; in which latter particular he may very likely be not far wrong, for there
 10 may well be some men who cannot be educated and made virtuous. But why is such a cause of change peculiar to his ideal state, and not rather common to all states, nay,

⁶⁷ This is an extract from the much fuller account in *Rep.* viii. 546 B.C.

to everything which comes into being at all? And is it by the agency of time, which, as he declares, makes all things change, that things which did not begin together, 15 change together? For example, if something has come into being the day before the completion of the cycle, will it change with things that came into being before? Further, why should the perfect state change into the Spartan? ⁶⁸ For governments more often take an opposite form than one akin to them. The same remark is 20 applicable to the other changes; he says that the Spartan constitution changes into an oligarchy, and this into a democracy, and this again into a tyranny. And yet the contrary happens quite as often; for a democracy is even more likely to change into an oligarchy than into a monarchy. Further, he never says whether tyranny 25 is, or is not, liable to revolutions, and if it is, what is the cause of them, or into what form it changes. And the reason is, that he could not very well have told: for there is no rule; according to him it should revert to the first and best, and then there would be a complete cycle. But in point of fact a tyranny often changes into a tyranny, 30 as that at Sicyon changed from the tyranny of Myron into that of Cleisthenes; into oligarchy, as the tyranny of Antileon did at Chalcis; into democracy, as that of Gelo's family did at Syracuse; into aristocracy, as at Carthage, and the tyranny of Charilaus at Lacedaemon. 35 Often an oligarchy changes into a tyranny, like most of the ancient oligarchies in Sicily; for example, the oligarchy at Leontini changed into the tyranny of Panaetius; that at Gela into the tyranny of Cleander; that at Rhegium into the tyranny of Anaxilaus; the same thing has happened in many other states. And it is absurd to

40 suppose that the state changes into oligarchy merely be-
 1316^b cause the ruling class are lovers and makers of money,⁶⁹
 and not because the very rich think it unfair that the very
 poor should have an equal share in the government with
 themselves. Moreover, in many oligarchies there are laws
 5 against making money in trade. But at Carthage, which
 is a democracy, there is no such prohibition; and yet to
 this day the Carthaginians have never had a revolu-
 tion. It is absurd too for him to say that an oli-
 garchy is two cities, one of the rich, and the other of the
 poor.⁷⁰ Is not this just as much the case in the Spartan
 constitution, or in any other in which either all do not
 possess equal property, or all are not equally good men?
 10 Nobody need be any poorer than he was before, and yet
 the oligarchy may change all the same into a democracy,
 if the poor form the majority; and a democracy may
 change into an oligarchy, if the wealthy class are stronger
 15 than the people, and the one are energetic, the other in-
 different. Once more, although the causes of the change⁷¹
 are very numerous, he mentions only one,⁷² which is,
 that the citizens become poor through dissipation and
 debt, as though he thought that all, or the majority of
 them, were originally rich. This is not true: though it is
 true that when any of the leaders lose their property they
 are ripe for revolution; but, when anybody else, it is no
 20 great matter, and an oligarchy does not even then more
 often pass into a democracy than into any other form
 of government. Again, if men are deprived of the hon-
 ours of state, and are wronged, and insulted, they make
 revolutions, and change forms of government, even
 although they have not wasted their substance because

⁶⁹ *Rep.* viii. 550 E.

⁷¹ *sc.* from oligarchy to democracy.

⁷⁰ *Rep.* viii. 551 D.

⁷² *Rep.* viii. 555 D.

they might do what they liked—of which extravagance he declares excessive freedom to be the cause.⁷³

Finally, although there are many forms of oligarchies 25 and democracies, Socrates speaks of their revolutions as though there were only one form of either of them.

⁷³ *Rep.* viii. 557 c, 564.

BOOK VI

1 We have now considered the varieties of the deliberative or supreme power in states, and the various arrangements of law-courts and state offices, and which of them are adapted to different forms of government.¹

We have also spoken of the destruction and preservation
35 of constitutions, how and from what causes they arise.²

Of democracy and all other forms of government there are many kinds; and it will be well to assign to them severally the modes of organization which are proper and advantageous to each, adding what remains to be
40 said about them.³ Moreover, we ought to consider the
1317^a various combinations of these modes themselves; for such combinations make constitutions overlap one another, so that aristocracies have an oligarchical character, and constitutional governments incline to democracies.⁴

When I speak of the combinations which remain to be considered, and thus far have not been considered by
5 us, I mean such as these:—when the deliberative part of the government and the election of officers is constituted oligarchically, and the law-courts aristocratically, or when the courts and the deliberative part of the state

¹ Bk. iv. 14–16.

³ 1318^b 6–1319^a 6.

² Bk. v.

⁴ Cp. iv. 1293^b 34.

are oligarchical, and the election to offices aristocratical, or when in any other way there is a want of harmony in the composition of a state.⁵

I have shown already ⁶ what forms of democracy are 10 suited to particular cities, and what of oligarchy to particular peoples, and to whom each of the other forms of government is suited. Further, we must not only show which of these governments is the best for each state, but also briefly proceed to consider ⁷ how these and other 15 forms of government are to be established.

First of all let us speak of democracy, which will also bring to light the opposite form of government commonly called oligarchy. For the purposes of this inquiry we need to ascertain all the elements and characteristics of democracy, since from the combinations of these the 20 varieties of democratic government arise. There are several of these differing from each other, and the difference is due to two causes. One (1) has been already mentioned ⁸—differences of population; for the popular element may consist of husbandmen, or of mechanics, 25 or of labourers, and if the first of these be added to the second, or the third to the two others, not only does the democracy become better or worse, but its very nature is changed. A second cause (2) remains to be mentioned: the various properties and characteristics of de- 30 mocracy, when variously combined, make a difference. For one democracy will have less and another will have more, and another will have all of these characteristics. There is an advantage in knowing them all, whether a man wishes to establish some new form of democracy, or only to remodel an existing one.⁹ Founders of states 35

⁵ These questions are not actually discussed by A.

⁶ iv. 12.

⁷ Cp. iv. 1289^b 20. ⁸ iv. 1291^b 17–28, 1292^b 25 sqq., 1296^b 26–31.

⁹ Cp. iv. 1289^a 1.

try to bring together all the elements which accord with the ideas of the several constitutions; but this is a mistake of theirs, as I have already remarked ¹⁰ when speaking of the destruction and preservation of states. We will now set forth the principles, characteristics, and aims of such states.

40 **2** The basis of a democratic state is liberty; which, according to the common opinion of men, can only be enjoyed in such a state;—this they affirm to be the great end of every democracy.¹¹ One principle of liberty is for all to rule and be ruled in turn, and indeed democratic justice is the application of numerical not proportionate
5 equality; whence it follows that the majority must be supreme, and that whatever the majority approve must be the end and the just. Every citizen, it is said, must have equality, and therefore in a democracy the poor have more power than the rich, because there are more of them, and the will of the majority is supreme. This,
10 then, is one note of liberty which all democrats affirm to be the principle of their state. Another is that a man should live as he likes.¹² This, they say, is the privilege of a freeman, since, on the other hand; not to live as a man likes is the mark of a slave. This is the second characteristic of democracy, whence has arisen the claim of
15 men to be ruled by none, if possible, or, if this is impossible, to rule and be ruled in turns; and so it contributes to the freedom based upon equality.

Such being our foundation and such the principle from which we start, the characteristics of democracy are as
20 follows:—the election of officers by all out of all; and that all should rule over each, and each in his turn over

¹⁰ v. 1309^b 18–1310^a 36.

¹² Cp. v. 1310^a 31.

¹¹ Cp. Plato, *Rep.* viii. 557 sqq.

all; that the appointment to all offices, or to all but those which require experience and skill,¹³ should be made by lot; that no property qualification should be required for offices, or only a very low one; that a man should not hold the same office twice, or not often, or in the case of few except military offices: that the tenure of all offices, or of as many as possible, should be brief; that all men should sit in judgement, or that judges selected out of all should judge, in all matters, or in most and in the greatest and most important—such as the scrutiny of accounts, the constitution, and private contracts; that the assembly should be supreme over all causes, or at any rate over the most important, and the magistrates over none or only over a very few. Of all magistracies, a council is the most democratic¹⁴ when there is not the means of paying all the citizens, but when they are paid even this is robbed of its power; for the people then draw all cases to themselves, as I said in the previous discussion.¹⁵ The next characteristic of democracy is payment for services; assembly, law-courts, magistrates, everybody receives pay, when it is to be had; or when it is not to be had for all, then it is given to the law-courts and to the stated assemblies, to the council and to the magistrates, or at least to any of them who are compelled to have their meals together. And whereas oligarchy is characterized by birth, wealth, and education, the notes of democracy appear to be the opposite of these—low birth, poverty, mean employment. Another note is that no magistracy is perpetual, but if any such have survived some ancient change in the constitution it should be stripped of its power, and the holders should be elected by lot and no longer by vote. These are the points common to all democracies; but democracy and demos in their truest

¹³ Cp. iv. 1298^a 27.¹⁴ Cp. iv. 1299^b 32.¹⁵ Cp. iv. 1299^b 38.

5 form are based upon the recognized principle of democratic justice, that all should count equally; for equality implies that the poor should have no more share in the government than the rich, and should not be the only rulers, but that all should rule equally according to their numbers.¹⁶ And in this way men think that they will
10 secure equality and freedom in their state.

3 Next comes the question, how is this equality to be obtained? Are we to assign to a thousand poor men the property qualifications of five hundred rich men? and shall we give the thousand a power equal to that of the five hundred? or, if this is not to be the mode, ought we,
15 still retaining the same ratio, to take equal numbers from each and give them the control of the elections and of the courts?—Which, according to the democratical notion, is the juster form of the constitution—this or one based on numbers only? Democrats say that justice is that to
20 which the majority agree, oligarchs that to which the wealthier class; in their opinion the decision should be given according to the amount of property. In both principles there is some inequality and injustice. For if justice is the will of the few, any one person who has more wealth than all the rest of the rich put together, ought, upon the oligarchical principle, to have the sole power—
25 but this would be tyranny; or if justice is the will of the majority, as I was before saying,¹⁷ they will unjustly confiscate the property of the wealthy minority. To find a principle of equality in which they both agree we must inquire into their respective ideas of justice.

Now they agree in saying that whatever is decided by the majority of the citizens is to be deemed law. Granted:
30 —but not without some reserve; since there are two

¹⁶ Cp. iv. 1291^b 30.

¹⁷ Cp. iii. 1281^a 14.

classes out of which a state is composed—the poor and the rich—that is to be deemed law, on which both or the greater part of both agree; and if they disagree, that which is approved by the greater number, and by those who have the higher qualification. For example, suppose that there are ten rich and twenty poor, and some measure is approved by six of the rich and is disapproved by fifteen of the poor, and the remaining four of the rich 35 join with the party of the poor, and the remaining five of the poor with that of the rich; in such a case the will of those whose qualifications, when both sides are added up, are the greatest, should prevail. If they turn out to be equal, there is no greater difficulty than at present, when, if the assembly or the courts are divided, recourse 40 is had to the lot, or to some similar expedient. But, al- 1318^b though it may be difficult in theory to know what is just and equal, the practical difficulty of inducing those to forbear who can, if they like, encroach, is far greater, for the weaker are always asking for equality and justice, but the stronger care for none of these things. 5

4 Of the four kinds of democracy, as was said in the previous discussion,¹⁸ the best is that which comes first in order; it is also the oldest of them all. I am speaking of them according to the natural classification of their inhabitants. For the best material of democracy is an agricultural population;¹⁹ there is no difficulty in form- 10 ing a democracy where the mass of the people live by agriculture or tending of cattle. Being poor, they have no leisure, and therefore do not often attend the assembly, and not having the necessities of life they are always at work, and do not covet the property of others. Indeed, they find their employment pleasanter than the cares of

¹⁸ iv. 1292^b 22–1293^a 10.

¹⁹ Cp. iv. 1292^b 25–33.

15 government or office where no great gains can be made out of them, for the many are more desirous of gain than of honour.²⁰ A proof is that even the ancient tyrannies were patiently endured by them, as they still endure oligarchies, if they are allowed to work and are not deprived of their property; for some of them grow quickly
20 rich and the others are well enough off. Moreover, they have the power of electing the magistrates and calling them to account; ²¹ their ambition, if they have any, is thus satisfied; and in some democracies, although they do not all share in the appointment of offices, except through representatives elected in turn out of the whole
25 people, as at Mantinea;—yet, if they have the power of deliberating, the many are contented. Even this form of government may be regarded as a democracy, and was such at Mantinea. Hence it is both expedient and customary in the afore-mentioned ²² type of democracy that
30 all should elect to offices, and conduct scrutinies, and sit in the law-courts, but that the great offices should be filled up by election and from persons having a qualification; the greater requiring a greater qualification, or, if there be no offices for which a qualification is required, then those who are marked out by special ability should be appointed. Under such a form of government the citizens are sure to be governed well (for the offices will always be held by the best persons; the people are will-
35 ing enough to elect them and are not jealous of the good). The good and the notables will then be satisfied, for they will not be governed by men who are their inferiors, and the persons elected will rule justly, because others will call them to account. Every man should be responsible to others, nor should any one be allowed to
40 do just as he pleases; for where absolute freedom is

²⁰ Cp. iv. 1297^b 6.²¹ Cp. ii. 1274^a 15.²² 1. 6.

allowed there is nothing to restrain the evil which is in- 1319^a
herent in every man. But the principle of responsibility
secures that which is the greatest good in states; the
right persons rule and are prevented from doing wrong,
and the people have their due. It is evident that this is
the best kind of democracy, and why? Because the 5
people are drawn from a certain class. Some of the an-
cient laws of most states were, all of them, useful with
a view to making the people husbandmen. They pro-
vided either that no one should possess more than a cer-
tain quantity of land, or that, if he did, the land should
not be within a certain distance from the town or the
acropolis. Formerly in many states there was a law for- 10
bidding any one to sell his original allotment of land.²³
There is a similar law attributed to Oxylus, which is to
the effect that there should be a certain portion of every
man's land on which he could not borrow money. A useful
corrective to the evil of which I am speaking would be
the law of the Aphytaeans, who, although they are 15
numerous, and do not possess much land, are all of them
husbandmen. For their properties are reckoned in the
census; not entire, but only in such small portions that
even the poor may have more than the amount required.

Next best to an agricultural, and in many respects 20
similar, are a pastoral people, who live by their flocks;
they are the best trained of any for war, robust in body
and able to camp out. The people of whom other de-
mocracies consist are far inferior to them, for their life 25
is inferior; there is no room for moral excellence in any
of their employments, whether they be mechanics or
traders or labourers. Besides, people of this class can
readily come to the assembly, because they are contin-
ually moving about in the city and in the agora; whereas 30

²³ Cp. ii. 1266^b 21.

husbandmen are scattered over the country and do not meet, or equally feel the want of assembling together. Where the territory also happens to extend to a distance
35 from the city, there is no difficulty in making an excellent democracy or constitutional government; for the people are compelled to settle in the country, and even if there is a town population the assembly ought not to meet, in democracies, when the country people cannot come. We have thus explained how the first and best form of de-
40 mocracy should be constituted; it is clear that the other or inferior sorts will deviate in a regular order, and the
1319^b population which is excluded will at each stage be of a lower kind.

The last form of democracy, that in which all share alike, is one which cannot be borne by all states, and will not last long unless well regulated by laws and customs. The more general causes which tend to destroy this
5 or other kinds of government have been pretty fully considered.²⁴ In order to constitute such a democracy and strengthen the people, the leaders have been in the habit of including as many as they can, and making citizens not only of those who are legitimate, but even of
the illegitimate, and of those who have only one parent
10 a citizen, whether father or mother;²⁵ for nothing of this sort comes amiss to such a democracy. This is the way in which demagogues proceed. Whereas the right thing would be to make no more additions when the number of the commonalty exceeds that of the notables and of the middle class—beyond this not to go. When in
15 excess of this point, the constitution becomes disorderly, and the notables grow excited and impatient of the democracy, as in the insurrection at Cyrene; for no notice

²⁴ v. 2-7, 1311^a 22-1313^a 16.

²⁵ Cp. iii. 1278^a 27.

is taken of a little evil, but when it increases it strikes the eye. Measures like those which Cleisthenes²⁶ passed when he wanted to increase the power of the democracy 20 at Athens, or such as were taken by the founders of popular government at Cyrene, are useful in the extreme form of democracy. Fresh tribes and brotherhoods should be established; the private rites of families should be restricted and converted into public ones; in short, every contrivance should be adopted which will mingle 25 the citizens with one another and get rid of old connections. Again, the measures which are taken by tyrants appear all of them to be democratic; such, for instance, as the licence permitted to slaves (which may be to a certain extent advantageous) and also that of women and children, and the allowing everybody to live as he likes.²⁷ Such a government will have many supporters, 30 for most persons would rather live in a disorderly than in a sober manner.

5 The mere establishment of a democracy is not the only or principal business of the legislator, or of those who wish to create such a state, for any state, however 35 badly constituted, may last one, two, or three days; a far greater difficulty is the preservation of it. The legislator should therefore endeavour to have a firm foundation according to the principles already laid down concerning the preservation and destruction of states;²⁸ he should guard against the destructive elements, and 40 should make laws, whether written or unwritten, which will contain all the preservatives of states. He must not 1320^a think the truly democratical or oligarchical measure to be that which will give the greatest amount of democ-

²⁶ Cp. iii. 1275^b 35.

²⁷ Cp. v. 1313^b 32.

²⁸ Cp. Bk. v.

racy or oligarchy, but that which will make them last longest.²⁹ The demagogues of our own day often get
5 property confiscated³⁰ in the law-courts in order to please the people. But those who have the welfare of the state at heart should counteract them, and make a law that the property of the condemned should not be public and go into the treasury but be sacred. Thus offenders will be as much afraid, for they will be punished all the
10 same, and the people, having nothing to gain, will not be so ready to condemn the accused. Care should also be taken that state trials are as few as possible, and heavy penalties should be inflicted on those who bring groundless accusations; for it is the practice to indict, not members of the popular party, but the notables, although the
15 citizens ought to be all attached to the constitution as well, or at any rate should not regard their rulers as enemies.

Now, since in the last and worst form of democracy the citizens are very numerous, and can hardly be made
20 to assemble unless they are paid, and to pay them when there are no revenues presses hardly upon the notables (for the money must be obtained by a property-tax and confiscations and corrupt practices of the courts, things which have before now overthrown many democracies); where, I say, there are no revenues, the government should hold few assemblies, and the law-courts should consist of many persons, but sit for a few days only. This system has two advantages: first, the rich do not
25 fear the expense, even although they are unpaid themselves when the poor are paid; and secondly, causes are better tried, for wealthy persons, although they do not like to be long absent from their own affairs, do not mind going for a few days to the law-courts. Where there are

²⁹ Cp. v. 1313^a 20-33.

³⁰ Cp. v. 1305^a 3.

revenues the demagogues should not be allowed after their manner to distribute the surplus; the poor are 30 always receiving and always wanting more and more, for such help is like water poured into a leaky cask. Yet the true friend of the people should see that they be not too poor, for extreme poverty lowers the character of the 35 democracy; measures therefore should be taken which will give them lasting prosperity; and as this is equally the interest of all classes, the proceeds of the public revenues should be accumulated and distributed among its poor, if possible, in such quantities as may enable them to purchase a little farm, or, at any rate, make a beginning in trade or husbandry. And if this benevolence 1320^b cannot be extended to all, money should be distributed in turn according to tribes or other divisions, and in the meantime the rich should pay the fee for the attendance of the poor at the necessary assemblies; and should in return be excused from useless public services. By administering the state in this spirit the Carthaginians retain the affections of the people; their policy is from time 5 to time to send some of them into their dependent towns, where they grow rich.³¹ It is also worthy of a generous and sensible nobility to divide the poor amongst them, and give them the means of going to work. The example of the people of Tarentum is also well deserving of imi- 10 tation, for, by sharing the use of their own property with the poor, they gain their good will.³² Moreover, they divide all their offices into two classes, some of them being elected by vote, the others by lot; the latter, that the people may participate in them, and the former, that the state may be better administered. A like result may be gained by dividing the same offices, so as to have two

³¹ Cp. ii. 1273^b 18.³² Cp. ii. 1263^a 37.

15 classes of magistrates, one chosen by vote, the other by lot.

Enough has been said of the manner in which democracies ought to be constituted.

6 From these considerations there will be no difficulty in seeing what should be the constitution of oligarchies. We have only to reason from opposites and compare each form of oligarchy with the corresponding form of
20 democracy.

The first and best attempered of oligarchies is akin to a constitutional government. In this there ought to be two standards of qualification; the one high, the other low—the lower qualifying for the humbler yet indispensable offices and the higher for the superior ones. He
25 who acquires the prescribed qualification should have the rights of citizenship. The number of those admitted should be such as will make the entire governing body stronger than those who are excluded, and the new citizen should be always taken out of the better class of the people. The principle, narrowed a little, gives another
30 form of oligarchy; until at length we reach the most cliquish and tyrannical of them all, answering to the extreme democracy, which, being the worst, requires vigilance in proportion to its badness. For as healthy
35 bodies and ships well provided with sailors may undergo many mishaps and survive them, whereas sickly constitutions and rotten ill-manned ships are ruined by the very least mistake, so do the worst forms of government require the greatest care. The populousness of democ-
1321^a racies generally preserves them (for number is to democracy in the place of justice based on proportion); whereas the preservation of an oligarchy clearly depends on an opposite principle, viz. good order.

7 As there are four chief divisions of the common people—husbandmen, mechanics, retail traders, labourers; 5
so also there are four kinds of military forces—the cavalry, the heavy infantry, the light-armed troops, the navy.³³ When the country is adapted for cavalry, then a strong oligarchy is likely to be established. For the security of the inhabitants depends upon a force of this 10
sort, and only rich men can afford to keep horses. The second form of oligarchy prevails when the country is adapted to heavy infantry; for this service is better suited to the rich than to the poor. But the light-armed and the naval element are wholly democratic; and now- 15
adays, where they are numerous, if the two parties quarrel, the oligarchy are often worsted by them in the struggle. A remedy for this state of things may be found in the practice of generals who combine a proper contingent of light-armed troops with cavalry and heavy- 20
armed. And this is the way in which the poor get the better of the rich in civil contests; being lightly armed, they fight with advantage against cavalry and heavy infantry. An oligarchy which raises such a force out of the lower classes raises a power against itself. And therefore, since the ages of the citizens vary and some are older and some 25
younger, the fathers should have their own sons, while they are still young, taught the agile movements of light-armed troops; and these, when they have been taken 25
out of the ranks of the youth, should become light-armed warriors in reality. The oligarchy should also yield a share in the government to the people, either, as I said before, to those who have a property qualification,³⁴ or, as in the case of Thebes,³⁵ to those who have abstained 30
for a certain number of years from mean employments, or, as at Massalia, to men of merit who are selected for

³³ Cp. iv. 1289^b 32–40.³⁴ 1320^b 25.³⁵ Cp. iii. 1278^a 25.

their worthiness, whether previously citizens or not. The magistracies of the highest rank, which ought to be in the hands of the governing body, should have expensive duties attached to them, and then the people will not desire them and will take no offence at the privileges of their rulers when they see that they pay a heavy fine for
35 their dignity. It is fitting also that the magistrates on entering office should offer magnificent sacrifices or erect some public edifice, and then the people who participate in the entertainments, and see the city decorated with votive offerings and buildings, will not desire an alteration in the government, and the notables will have
40 memorials of their munificence. This, however, is anything but the fashion of our modern oligarchs, who are as covetous of gain as they are of honour; oligarchies like
1321^b theirs may be well described as petty democracies. Enough of the manner in which democracies and oligarchies should be organized.

8 Next in order follows the right distribution of offices,
5 their number, their nature, their duties, of which indeed we have already spoken.³⁶ No state can exist not having the necessary offices, and no state can be well administered not having the offices which tend to preserve harmony and good order. In small states, as we have already remarked,³⁷ there must not be many of them, but in
10 larger there must be a larger number, and we should carefully consider which offices may properly be united and which separated.

First among necessary offices is that which has the care of the market; a magistrate should be appointed to
15 inspect contracts and to maintain order. For in every state there must inevitably be buyers and sellers who will

³⁶ iv. 15.

³⁷ iv. 1299^a 34—b10.

supply one another's wants; this is the readiest way to make a state self-sufficing and so fulfil the purpose for which men come together into one state.³⁸ A second office of a similar kind undertakes the supervision and embellishment of public and private buildings, the maintaining and repairing of houses and roads, the prevention of disputes about boundaries, and other concerns of a like nature. This is commonly called the office of City-warden, and has various departments, which, in more populous towns, are shared among different persons, one, for example, taking charge of the walls, another of the fountains, a third of harbours. There is another equally necessary office, and of a similar kind, having to do with the same matters without the walls and in the country—the magistrates who hold this office are called Wardens of the country, or Inspectors of the woods. Besides these three there is a fourth office of receivers of taxes, who have under their charge the revenue which is distributed among the various departments; these are called Receivers or Treasurers. Another officer registers all private contracts, and decisions of the courts, all public indictments, and also all preliminary proceedings. This office again is sometimes subdivided, in which case one officer is appointed over all the rest. These officers are called Recorders or Sacred Recorders, Presidents, and the like.

Next to these comes an office of which the duties are the most necessary and also the most difficult, viz. that to which is committed the execution of punishments, or the exaction of fines from those who are posted up according to the registers; and also the custody of prisoners. The difficulty of this office arises out of the odium which is attached to it; no one will undertake it unless great profits are to be made, and any one who does is loath to

³⁸ Cp. i. 1252^b 27; *Nic. Eth.* v. 1134^a 26; *Pl. Rep.* ii. 369.

5 execute the law. Still the office is necessary; for judicial decisions are useless if they take no effect; and if society cannot exist without them, neither can it exist without the execution of them. It is an office which, being so unpopular, should not be entrusted to one person, but divided among several taken from different courts. In like manner an effort should be made to distribute among different persons the writing up of those who are on the
10 register of public debtors. Some sentences should be executed by the magistrates also, and in particular penalties due to the outgoing magistrates should be exacted by the incoming ones; and as regards those due to magistrates already in office, when one court has given judgment, another should exact the penalty; for example, the wardens of the city should exact the fines imposed by the wardens of the agora, and others again should exact the
15 fines imposed by *them*. For penalties are more likely to be exacted when less odium attaches to the exaction of them; but a double odium is incurred when the judges who have passed also execute the sentence, and if they are always the executioners, they will be the enemies of all.

In many places, while one magistracy executes the sentence, another has the custody of the prisoners, as, for
20 example, 'the Eleven' at Athens. It is well to separate off the jailorship also, and try by some device to render the office less unpopular. For it is quite as necessary as that of the executioners; but good men do all they can to avoid it, and worthless persons cannot safely be trusted
25 with it; for they themselves require a guard, and are not fit to guard others. There ought not therefore to be a single or permanent officer set apart for this duty; but it should be entrusted to the young, wherever they are or-

ganized into a band or guard, and different magistrates acting in turn should take charge of it.

These are the indispensable officers, and should be ranked first;—next in order follow others, equally necessary, but of higher rank, and requiring great experience and fidelity. Such are the officers to which are committed the guard of the city, and other military functions. Not only in time of war but of peace their duty will be to defend the walls and gates, and to muster and marshal the citizens. In some states there are many such offices; in others there are a few only, while small states are content with one; these officers are called generals or commanders. Again, if a state has cavalry or light-armed troops or archers or a naval force, it will sometimes happen that each of these departments has separate officers, who are called admirals, or generals of cavalry or of light-armed troops. And there are subordinate officers called naval captains, and captains of light-armed troops and of horse; having others under them:—all these are included in the department of war. Thus much of military command. 1322^b

But since many, not to say all, of these offices handle the public money, there must of necessity be another office which examines and audits them, and has no other functions. Such officers are called by various names—Scrutineers, Auditors, Accountants, Controllers. Besides all these offices there is another which is supreme over them, and to this is often entrusted both the introduction and the ratification of measures, or at all events it presides, in a democracy, over the assembly. For there must be a body which convenes the supreme authority in the state. In some places they are called ‘probuli’, because they hold previous deliberations, but in a democ-

racy more commonly 'councillors'.³⁹ These are the chief political offices.

Another set of officers is concerned with the maintenance of religion; priests and guardians see to the preservation and repair of the temples of the gods and to other matters of religion. One office of this sort may be enough in small places, but in larger ones there are a great many besides the priesthood; for example superintendents of public worship, guardians of shrines, treasurers of the sacred revenues. Nearly connected with these there are also the officers appointed for the performance of the public sacrifices, except any which the law assigns to the priests; such sacrifices derive their dignity from the public hearth of the city. They are sometimes called archons, sometimes kings,⁴⁰ and sometimes prytanes.

These, then, are the necessary offices, which may be summed up as follows: offices concerned with matters of religion, with war, with the revenue and expenditure, with the market, with the city, with the harbours, with the country; also with the courts of law, with the records of contracts, with execution of sentences, with custody of prisoners, with audits and scrutinies and accounts of magistrates; lastly, there are those which preside over the public deliberations of the state. There are likewise magistracies characteristic of states which are peaceful and prosperous, and at the same time have a regard to good order: such as the offices of guardians of women, guardians of the laws, guardians of children, and directors of gymnastics; also superintendents of gymnastic and Dionysiac contests, and of other similar spectacles. Some of these are clearly not democratic offices; for example, the guardianships of women and children⁴¹—the

³⁹ Cp. iv. 1299^b 31.

⁴⁰ Cp. iii. 1285^b 23.

⁴¹ Cp. iv. 1300^a 4.

poor, not having any slaves, must employ both their women and children as servants.

Once more: there are three offices according to whose directions the highest magistrates are chosen in certain states—guardians of the law, probuli, councillors—of these, the guardians of the law are an aristocratical, the probuli an oligarchical, the council a democratical institution. Enough of the different kinds of offices.

10

BOOK VII

1 He who would duly inquire about the best form of a
15 state ought first to determine which is the most eligible
life; while this remains uncertain the best form of the
state must also be uncertain; for, in the natural order of
things, those may be expected to lead the best life who
are governed in the best manner of which their circum-
stances admit. We ought therefore to ascertain, first of
20 all, which is the most generally eligible life, and then
whether the same life is or is not best for the state and
for individuals.

Assuming that enough has been already said in dis-
cussions outside the school concerning the best life, we
will now only repeat what is contained in them. Certainly
no one will dispute the propriety of that partition of
25 goods which separates them into three classes,¹ viz. ex-
ternal goods, goods of the body, and goods of the soul, or
deny that the happy man must have all three. For no one
would maintain that he is happy who has not in him a
particle of courage or temperance or justice or prudence,
who is afraid of every insect which flutters past him, and
30 will commit any crime, however great, in order to gratify
his lust of meat or drink, who will sacrifice his dearest
friend for the sake of half-a-farthing, and is as feeble and

¹ Cp. *Laws*, iii. 697 E, v. 743 E; *N. Eth.* i. 1098^b 12.

false in mind as a child or a madman. These propositions are almost universally acknowledged as soon as they are 35 uttered, but men differ about the degree or relative superiority of this or that good. Some think that a very moderate amount of virtue is enough, but set no limit to their desires of wealth, property, power, reputation, and the like. To whom we reply by an appeal to facts, which 40 easily prove that mankind do not acquire or preserve virtue by the help of external goods, but external goods by the help of virtue, and that happiness, whether con- 1323¹ sisting in pleasure or virtue, or both, is more often found with those who are most highly cultivated in their mind and in their character, and have only a moderate share of external goods, than among those who possess external 5 goods to a useless extent but are deficient in higher qualities; and this is not only matter of experience, but, if reflected upon, will easily appear to be in accordance with reason. For, whereas external goods have a limit, like any other instrument,² and all things useful are of such a nature that where there is too much of them they must either do harm, or at any rate be of no use, to their pos- sorsors, every good of the soul, the greater it is, is also of 10 greater use, if the epithet useful as well as noble is appropriate to such subjects. No proof is required to show that the best state of one thing in relation to another corresponds in degree of excellence to the interval between the 15 natures of which we say that these very states are states: so that, if the soul is more noble than our possessions or our bodies, both absolutely and in relation to us, it must be admitted that the best state of either has a similar ratio to the other. Again, it is for the sake of the soul that goods external and goods of the body are eligible at all,

² Cp. i. 1256^b 35.

20 and all wise men ought to choose them for the sake of the soul, and not the soul for the sake of them.

Let us acknowledge then that each one has just so much of happiness as he has of virtue and wisdom, and of virtuous and wise action. God is a witness to us of this truth, for he is happy and blessed, not by reason of any external good, but in himself and by reason of his own
 25 nature. And herein of necessity lies the difference between good fortune and happiness; for external goods come of themselves, and chance is the author of them, but no one is just or temperate by or through chance.³ In like
 30 manner, and by a similar train of argument, the happy state may be shown to be that which is best and which acts rightly; and rightly it cannot act without doing right actions, and neither individual nor state can do right actions without virtue and wisdom. Thus the courage,
 35 justice, and wisdom of a state have the same form and nature as the qualities which give the individual who possesses them the name of just, wise, or temperate.

Thus much may suffice by way of preface: for I could not avoid touching upon these questions, neither could I go through all the arguments affecting them; these are the business of another science.

40 Let us assume then that the best life, both for individ-
 1324^a uals and states, is the life of virtue, when virtue has external goods enough for the performance of good actions. If there are any who controvert our assertion, we will in this treatise pass them over, and consider their objections hereafter.

5 2 There remains to be discussed the question, Whether the happiness of the individual is the same as that of the state, or different? Here again there can be no doubt—no

³ *Nic. Eth.* i. 1099^b 20.

one denies that they are the same. For those who hold that the well-being of the individual consists in his wealth, also think that riches make the happiness of the whole state, and those who value most highly the life of a tyrant deem that city the happiest which rules over the greatest number; while they who approve an individual for his virtue say that the more virtuous a city is, the happier it is. Two points here present themselves for consideration: first (1), which is the more eligible life, that of a citizen who is a member of a state, or that of an alien who has no political ties; and again (2), which is the best form of constitution or the best condition of a state, either on the supposition that political privileges are desirable for all, or for a majority only? Since the good of the state and not of the individual is the proper subject of political thought and speculation, and we are engaged in a political discussion, while the first of these two points has a secondary interest for us, the latter will be the main subject of our inquiry.

Now it is evident that the form of government is best in which every man, whoever he is, can act best and live happily. But even those who agree in thinking that the life of virtue is the most eligible raise a question, whether the life of business and politics is or is not more eligible than one which is wholly independent of external goods, I mean than a contemplative life, which by some is maintained to be the only one worthy of a philosopher. For these two lives—the life of the philosopher and the life of the statesman—appear to have been preferred by those who have been most keen in the pursuit of virtue, both in our own and in other ages. Which is the better is a question of no small moment; for the wise man, like the wise state, will necessarily regulate his life according to the best end. There are some who think that while a despotic

rule over others is the greatest injustice, to exercise a constitutional rule over them, even though not unjust, is a great impediment to a man's individual well-being. Others take an opposite view; they maintain that the true
40 life of man is the practical and political, and that every
1324^b virtue admits of being practised, quite as much by statesmen and rulers as by private individuals. Others, again, are of opinion that arbitrary and tyrannical rule alone consists with happiness; indeed, in some states the entire aim both of the laws and of the constitution is to give men
5 despotic power over their neighbours. And, therefore, although in most cities the laws may be said generally to be in a chaotic state, still, if they aim at anything, they aim at the maintenance of power: thus in Lacedaemon and Crete the system of education and the greater part of the laws are framed with a view to war.⁴ And in all nations
10 which are able to gratify their ambition military power is held in esteem, for example among the Scythians and Persians and Thracians and Celts. In some nations there are even laws tending to stimulate the warlike virtues, as at Carthage, where we are told that men obtain the
15 honour of wearing as many armlets as they have served campaigns. There was once a law in Macedonia that he who had not killed an enemy should wear a halter, and among the Scythians no one who had not slain his man was allowed to drink out of the cup which was handed round at a certain feast. Among the Iberians, a warlike nation, the number of enemies whom a man has slain is
20 indicated by the number of obelisks which are fixed in the earth round his tomb; and there are numerous practices among other nations of a like kind, some of them established by law and others by custom. Yet to a reflecting mind it must appear very strange that the statesman

⁴ Cp. Plato, *Laws*, i. 633 ff.

should be always considering how he can dominate and 25
tyrannize over others, whether they will or not. How can
that which is not even lawful be the business of the states-
man or the legislator? Unlawful it certainly is to rule
without regard to justice, for there may be might where
there is no right. The other arts and sciences offer no
parallel; a physician is not expected to persuade or co- 30
erce his patients, nor a pilot the passengers in his ship.
Yet most men appear to think that the art of despotic
government is statesmanship, and what men affirm to be
unjust and inexpedient in their own case they are not
ashamed of practising towards others; they demand 35
just rule for themselves, but where other men are con-
cerned they care nothing about it. Such behaviour is
irrational; unless the one party is, and the other is not,
born to serve, in which case men have a right to com-
mand, not indeed all their fellows, but only those who
are intended to be subjects; just as we ought not to hunt
mankind, whether for food or sacrifice, but only the ani-
mals which may be hunted for food or sacrifice, this is to 40
say, such wild animals as are eatable. And surely there
may be a city happy in isolation, which we will assume to 1325^a
be well-governed (for it is quite possible that a city thus
isolated might be well-administered and have good
laws); but such a city would not be constituted with any
view to war or the conquest of enemies—all that sort of
thing must be excluded. Hence we see very plainly that 5
warlike pursuits, although generally to be deemed hon-
ourable, are not the supreme end of all things, but only
means. And the good lawgiver should inquire how states
and races of men and communities may participate in a
good life, and in the happiness which is attainable by
them. His enactments will not be always the same; and 10

where there are neighbours⁵ he will have to see what sort of studies should be practised in relation to their several characters, or how the measures appropriate in relation to each are to be adopted. The end at which the best form of government should aim may be properly made a matter of future consideration.⁶

3 Let us now address those who, while they agree that the life of virtue is the most eligible, differ about the manner of practising it. For some renounce political power,
20 and think that the life of the freeman is different from the life of the statesman and the best of all; but others think the life of the statesman best. The argument of the latter is that he who does nothing cannot do well, and that virtuous activity is identical with happiness. To both we say: 'you are partly right and partly wrong.' The first
25 class are right in affirming that the life of the freeman is better than the life of the despot; for there is nothing grand or noble in having the use of a slave, in so far as he is a slave; or in issuing commands about necessary things. But it is an error to suppose that every sort of rule is despotic like that of a master over slaves, for there is as great a difference between the rule over freemen and the rule over slaves as there is between slavery by nature
30 and freedom by nature, about which I have said enough at the commencement of this treatise.⁷ And it is equally a mistake to place inactivity above action, for happiness is activity, and the actions of the just and wise are the realization of much that is noble.

But perhaps some one, accepting these premises, may still maintain that supreme power is the best of all things,
35 because the possessors of it are able to perform the greatest number of noble actions. If so, the man who is able to

⁵ Cp. ii. 1265^a 20, 1267^a 10.

⁶ 1333^a 11 sqq.

⁷ i. 4-7.

rule, instead of giving up anything to his neighbour, ought rather to take away his power; and the father should make no account of his son, nor the son of his father, nor friend of friend; they should not bestow a thought on one another in comparison with this higher object, for the best is the most eligible and 'doing well' is 40 the best. There might be some truth in such a view if we 1325^b assume that robbers and plunderers attain the chief good. But this can never be; their hypothesis is false. For the actions of a ruler cannot really be honourable, unless he is as much superior to other men as a husband is to a wife, or a father to his children, or a master to his slaves. And 5 therefore he who violates the law can never recover by any success, however great, what he has already lost in departing from virtue. For equals the honourable and the just consist in sharing alike, as is just and equal. But that the unequal should be given to equals, and the unlike to those who are like, is contrary to nature, and nothing which is contrary to nature is good. If therefore, there is 10 any one⁸ superior in virtue and in the power of performing the best actions, him we ought to follow and obey, but he must have the capacity for action as well as virtue.

If we are right in our view, and happiness is assumed to be virtuous activity, the active life will be the best, 15 both for every city collectively, and for individuals. Not that a life of action must necessarily have relation to others, as some persons think, nor are those ideas only to be regarded as practical which are pursued for the sake of practical results, but much more the thoughts and contemplations which are independent and complete in 20 themselves; since virtuous activity, and therefore a certain kind of action, is an end, and even in the case of external actions the directing mind is most truly said to act.

⁸ Cp. iii. 1284^b 32 and 1288^a 28.

Neither, again, is it necessary that states which are cut off from others and choose to live alone should be inactive; for activity, as well as other things, may take place by sections; there are many ways in which the sections of a state act upon one another. The same thing is equally true of every individual. If this were otherwise, God and the universe, who have no external actions over and above their own energies, would be far enough from perfection. Hence it is evident that the same life is best for each individual, and for states and for mankind collectively.

4 Thus far by way of introduction. In what has preceded⁹ I have discussed other forms of government; in what remains the first point to be considered is what should be the conditions of the ideal or perfect state; for the perfect state cannot exist without a due supply of the means of life. And therefore we must pre-suppose many purely imaginary conditions,¹⁰ but nothing impossible. There will be a certain number of citizens, a country in which to place them, and the like. As the weaver or ship-builder or any other artisan must have the material proper for his work (and in proportion as this is better prepared, so will the result of his art be nobler), so the statesman or legislator must also have the materials suited to him.

5 First among the materials required by the statesman is population: he will consider what should be the number and character of the citizens, and then what should be the size and character of the country. Most persons think that a state in order to be happy ought to be large; but even if they are right, they have no idea what is a large and what a small state. For they judge of the size

⁹ Bk. ii.

¹⁰ Cp. ii. 1265^a 17.

of the city by the number of the inhabitants; whereas they ought to regard, not their number, but their power. A city too, like an individual, has a work to do; and that city which is best adapted to the fulfilment of its work is to be deemed greatest, in the same sense of the word great 15 in which Hippocrates might be called greater, not as a man, but as a physician, than some one else who was taller. And even if we reckon greatness by numbers, we ought not to include everybody, for there must always be in cities a multitude of slaves and sojourners and foreign- 20 ers; but we should include those only who are members of the state, and who form an essential part of it. The number of the latter is a proof of the greatness of a city; but a city which produces numerous artisans and comparatively few soldiers cannot be great, for a great city is not to be confounded with a populous one. Moreover, experience shows that a very populous city can rarely, if 25 ever, be well governed; since all cities which have a reputation for good government have a limit of population. We may argue on grounds of reason, and the same result will follow. For law is order, and good law is good order; but a very great multitude cannot be orderly: to intro- 30 duce order into the unlimited is the work of a divine power—of such a power as holds together the universe. Beauty is realized in number and magnitude,¹¹ and the state which combines magnitude with good order must necessarily be the most beautiful. To the size of states 35 there is a limit, as there is to other things, plants, animals, implements; for none of these retain their natural power when they are too large or too small, but they either wholly lose their nature, or are spoiled. For example,¹² a 40 ship which is only a span long will not be a ship at all, nor a ship a quarter of a mile long; yet there may be a ship

¹¹ Cp. *Poet.* 1450^b 36.¹² Cp. v. 1309^b 23.

1326^b of a certain size, either too large or too small, which will still be a ship, but bad for sailing. In like manner a state when composed of too few is not, as a state ought to be, self-sufficing; when of too many, though self-sufficing in all mere necessities, as a nation may be, it is not a state, 5 being almost incapable of constitutional government. For who can be the general of such a vast multitude, or who the herald, unless he have the voice of a Stentor?

A state, then, only begins to exist when it has attained a population sufficient for a good life in the political community: it may indeed, if it somewhat exceed this number, be a greater state. But, as I was saying, there must be a limit. What should be the limit will be easily ascertained by experience. For both governors and governed have duties to perform; the special functions of a governor are to command and to judge. But if the citizens of 15 a state are to judge and to distribute offices according to merit, then they must know each other's characters; where they do not possess this knowledge, both the election to offices and the decision of lawsuits will go wrong. When the population is very large they are manifestly 20 settled at haphazard, which clearly ought not to be. Besides, in an over-populous state foreigners and metics will readily acquire the rights of citizens, for who will find them out? Clearly then the best limit of the population of a state is the largest number which suffices for the 25 purposes of life, and can be taken in at a single view. Enough concerning the size of a state.

5 Much the same principle will apply to the territory of the state: every one would agree in praising the territory which is most entirely self-sufficing; and that must be the territory which is all-producing, for to have all things and 30 to want nothing is sufficiency. In size and extent it should

be such as may enable the inhabitants to live at once temperately and liberally in the enjoyment of leisure.¹³ Whether we are right or wrong in laying down this limit we will inquire more precisely hereafter,¹⁴ when we have occasion to consider what is the right use of property and 35 wealth: a matter which is much disputed, because men are inclined to rush into one of two extremes, some into meanness, others into luxury.

It is not difficult to determine the general character of the territory which is required (there are, however, some points on which military authorities should be heard); it 40 should be difficult of access to the enemy, and easy of egress to the inhabitants. Further, we require that the 1327^a land as well as the inhabitants of whom we were just now speaking¹⁵ should be taken in at a single view, for a country which is easily seen can be easily protected. As to the position of the city, if we could have what we wish, it should be well situated in regard both to sea and land. 5 This then is one principle, that it should be a convenient centre for the protection of the whole country: the other is, that it should be suitable for receiving the fruits of the soil, and also for the bringing in of timber and any other 10 products that are easily transported.

6 Whether a communication with the sea is beneficial to a well-ordered state or not is a question which has often been asked. It is argued that the introduction of strangers brought up under other laws, and the increase of population, will be adverse to good order; the increase 15 arises from their using the sea and having a crowd of merchants coming and going, and is inimical to good government.¹⁶ Apart from these considerations, it would be

¹³ Cp. ii. 1265^a 32.

¹⁵ 1326^b 22-24.

¹⁴ This promise is not fulfilled.

¹⁶ Cp. Plato, *Laws*, iv. 704 D-705 B.

undoubtedly better, both with a view to safety and to the provision of necessities, that the city and territory should be connected with the sea; the defenders of a country, if they are to maintain themselves against an enemy, should be easily relieved both by land and by sea; and even if they are not able to attack by sea and land at once, they will have less difficulty in doing mischief to their assailants on one element, if they themselves can use both. Moreover, it is necessary that they should import from abroad what is not found in their own country, and that they should export what they have in excess; for a city ought to be a market, not indeed for others, but for herself.

Those who make themselves a market for the world only do so for the sake of revenue, and if a state ought not to desire profit of this kind it ought not to have such an emporium. Nowadays we often see in countries and cities dockyards and harbours very conveniently placed outside the city, but not too far off; and they are kept in dependence by walls and similar fortifications. Cities thus situated manifestly reap the benefit of intercourse with their ports; and any harm which is likely to accrue may be easily guarded against by the laws, which will pronounce and determine who may hold communication with one another, and who may not.

There can be no doubt that the possession of a moderate naval force is advantageous to a city; the city should be formidable not only to its own citizens but to some of its neighbours,¹⁷ or, if necessary, able to assist them by sea as well as by land. The proper number or magnitude of this naval force is relative to the character of the state; for if her function is to take a leading part in politics, her naval power should be commensurate with

¹⁷ Cp. ii. 1265^a 20.

the scale of her enterprises. The population of the state need not be much increased, since there is no necessity that the sailors should be citizens: the marines who have the control and command will be freemen, and belong also to the infantry; and wherever there is a dense population of Perioeci and husbandmen, there will always be sailors more than enough. Of this we see instances at the present day. The city of Heraclea, for example, although small in comparison with many others, can man a considerable fleet. Such are our conclusions respecting the territory of the state, its harbours, its towns, its relations to the sea, and its maritime power.

7 Having spoken of the number of the citizens,¹⁸ we will proceed to speak of what should be their character. This is a subject which can be easily understood by any one who casts his eye on the more celebrated states of Hellas, and generally on the distribution of races in the habitable world. Those who live in a cold climate and in Europe are full of spirit, but wanting in intelligence and skill; and therefore they retain comparative freedom, but have no political organization, and are incapable of ruling over others. Whereas the natives of Asia are intelligent and inventive, but they are wanting in spirit, and therefore they are always in a state of subjection and slavery. But the Hellenic race, which is situated between them, is likewise intermediate in character, being high-spirited and also intelligent.¹⁹ Hence it continues free, and is the best-governed of any nation, and, if it could be formed into one state, would be able to rule the world. There are also similar differences in the different tribes of Hellas; for some of them are of a one-sided nature, and are intelligent or courageous only, while in others there is

¹⁸ 1326^a 9-b24.

¹⁹ Cp. Plato, *Rep.* iv. 435 E, 436 A.

a happy combination of both qualities. And clearly those whom the legislator will most easily lead to virtue may be expected to be both intelligent and courageous. Some²⁰ say that the guardians should be friendly towards those
 40 whom they know, fierce towards those whom they do not
 1328^a know. Now, passion is the quality of the soul which begets friendship and enables us to love; notably the spirit within us is more stirred against our friends and acquaintances than against those who are unknown to us, when we think that we are despised by them; for which reason Archilochus, complaining of his friends, very naturally addresses his soul in these words,

5 ‘For surely thou art plagued on account of friends.’

The power of command and the love of freedom are in all men based upon this quality, for passion is commanding and invincible. Nor is it right to say that the guardians should be fierce towards those whom they do not know, for we ought not to be out of temper with any one; and a lofty spirit is not fierce by nature, but only when
 10 excited against evil-doers. And this, as I was saying before, is a feeling which men show most strongly towards their friends if they think they have received a wrong at their hands: as indeed is reasonable; for, besides the actual injury, they seem to be deprived of a benefit by those who owe them one. Hence the saying,

15 ‘Cruel is the strife of brethren,’

and again,

‘They who love in excess also hate in excess.’

Thus we have nearly determined the number and character of the citizens of our state, and also the size and

²⁰ *Rep.* ii. 375 c.

nature of their territory. I say 'nearly', for we ought not to require the same minuteness in theory as in the facts given by perception.²¹

8 As in other natural compounds the conditions of a composite whole are not necessarily organic parts of it, so in a state or in any other combination forming a unity not everything is a part, which is a necessary condition.²² The members of an association have necessarily some one thing the same and common to all, in which they share equally or unequally; for example, food or land or any other thing. But where there are two things of which one is a means and the other an end, they have nothing in common except that the one receives what the other produces. Such, for example, is the relation in which workmen and tools stand to their work; the house and the builder have nothing in common, but the art of the builder is for the sake of the house. And so states require property, but property, even though living beings are included in it,²³ is no part of a state; for a state is not a community of living beings only, but a community of equals, aiming at the best life possible. Now, whereas happiness is the highest good, being a realization and perfect practice of virtue, which some can attain, while others have little or none of it, the various qualities of men are clearly the reason why there are various kinds of states and many forms of government; for different men seek after happiness in different ways and by different means, and so make for themselves different modes of life and forms of government. We must see also how many things are indispensable to the existence of a state, for what we call the parts of a state will be found among

²¹ Cp. 1331^b 18.

²² Cp. iii. 1278^a 2.

²³ Cp. i. 1253^b 32.

the indispensables. Let us then enumerate the functions
5 of a state, and we shall easily elicit what we want:

First, there must be food; secondly, arts, for life requires many instruments; thirdly, there must be arms, for the members of a community have need of them, and in their own hands, too, in order to maintain authority
10 both against disobedient subjects and against external assailants; fourthly, there must be a certain amount of revenue, both for internal needs, and for the purposes of war; fifthly, or rather first, there must be a care of religion, which is commonly called worship; sixthly, and most necessary of all, there must be a power of deciding what is for the public interest, and what is just in men's dealings with one another.

15 These are the services which every state may be said to need. For a state is not a mere aggregate of persons, but a union of them sufficing for the purposes of life; and if any of these things be wanting, it is as we maintain²⁴ impossible that the community can be absolutely self-sufficing. A state then should be framed with a view to the fulfilment of these functions. There must be husband-
20 men to procure food, and artisans, and a warlike and a wealthy class, and priests, and judges to decide what is necessary and expedient.

9 Having determined these points, we have in the next place to consider whether all ought to share in every sort
25 of occupation. Shall every man be at once husbandman, artisan, councillor, judge, or shall we suppose the several occupations just mentioned assigned to different persons? or, thirdly, shall some employments be assigned to individuals and others common to all? The same ar-
30 rangement, however, does not occur in every constitu-

²⁴ Cp. ii. 1261^b 12, iii. 1275^b 20, v. 1303^a 26.

tion; as we were saying, all may be shared by all, or not all by all, but only by some; and hence arise the differences of constitutions, for in democracies all share in all, in oligarchies the opposite practice prevails. Now, since we are here speaking of the best form of government, i. e. that under which the state will be most happy (and happiness, as has been already said, cannot exist without virtue²⁵), it clearly follows that in the state which is best governed and possesses men who are just absolutely, and not merely relatively to the principle of the constitution, the citizens must not lead the life of mechanics or tradesmen, for such a life is ignoble, and inimical to virtue.²⁶ 40
Neither must they be husbandmen, since leisure is necessary both for the development of virtue and the performance of political duties. 1329^a

Again, there is in a state a class of warriors, and another of councillors, who advise about the expedient and determine matters of law, and these seem in an especial manner parts of a state. Now, should these two classes be distinguished, or are both functions to be assigned to the same persons? Here again there is no difficulty in seeing that both functions will in one way belong to the same, in another, to different persons. To different persons in so far as these employments are suited to different primes of life,²⁷ for the one requires wisdom and the other strength. But on the other hand, since it is an impossible thing that those who are able to use or to resist force should be willing to remain always in subjection, from this point of view the persons are the same; for those who carry arms can always determine the fate of the constitution. It remains therefore that both functions should be entrusted

²⁵ Cp. 1323^a 21-1324^a 4, 1328^a 37 sq.

²⁶ Cp. Plato, *Laws*, xi. 919 c-e.

²⁷ i. e. the physical and the mental.

by the ideal constitution to the same persons, not, however, at the same time, but in the order prescribed by
 15 nature, who has given to young men strength and to older men wisdom. Such a distribution of duties will be expedient and also just, and is founded upon a principle of conformity to merit. Besides, the ruling class should be the owners of property, for they are citizens, and the
 20 citizens of a state should be in good circumstances; whereas mechanics or any other class which is not a producer of virtue have no share in the state. This follows from our first principle,²⁸ for happiness cannot exist without virtue, and a city is not to be termed happy in regard to a portion of the citizens, but in regard to them all.²⁹
 25 And clearly property should be in their hands, since the husbandmen will of necessity be slaves or barbarian Perioeci.³⁰

Of the classes enumerated there remain only the priests, and the manner in which their office is to be regulated is obvious. No husbandman or mechanic should be appointed to it; for the Gods should receive honour from
 30 the citizens only. Now since the body of the citizens is divided into two classes, the warriors and the councillors, and it is befitting that the worship of the Gods should be duly performed, and also a rest provided in their service for those who from age have given up active life, to the old men of these two classes should be assigned the duties of the priesthood.

We have shown what are the necessary conditions, and
 35 what the parts of a state: husbandmen, craftsmen, and labourers of all kinds are necessary to the existence of states, but the parts of the state are the warriors and councillors. And these are distinguished severally from

²⁸ Cp. 1328^b 35.

³⁰ Cp. *infra*, 1330^a 25-31.

²⁹ Cp. ii. 1264^b 17-24.

one another, the distinction being in some cases permanent, in others not.

10 It is not a new or recent discovery of political philosophers that the state ought to be divided into classes, 40 and that the warriors should be separated from the husbandmen. The system has continued in Egypt and in Crete to this day, and was established, as tradition says, by a law of Sesostris in Egypt and of Minos in Crete. The institution of common tables also appears to be of ancient 5 date, being in Crete as old as the reign of Minos, and in Italy far older. The Italian historians say that there was a certain Italus king of Oenotria, from whom the Oenotrians were called Italians, and who gave the name of 10 Italy to the promontory of Europe lying within the Scylletic and Lametic Gulfs,³¹ which are distant from one another only half a day's journey. They say that this Italus converted the Oenotrians from shepherds into husbandmen, and besides other laws which he gave them, 15 was the founder of their common meals; even in our day some who are derived from him retain this institution and certain other laws of his. On the side of Italy towards Tyrrhenia dwelt the Opici, who are now, as of old, called 20 Ausones; and on the side towards Iapygia and the Ionian Gulf, in the district called Siritis, the Chones, who are likewise of Oenotrian race. From this part of the world originally came the institution of common tables; the separation into castes from Egypt, for the reign of Sesostris is of far greater antiquity than that of Minos. It is true indeed that these and many other things have been invented several times over³² in the course of ages, 25 or rather times without number; for necessity may be

³¹ i. e. between these gulfs and the Strait of Messina.

³² Cp. Plato, *Laws*, iii. 676; Aristotle, *Metaph.* xii. 1074^b 10; and *Pol.* ii. 1264^a 3.

supposed to have taught men the inventions which were absolutely required, and when these were provided, it was natural that other things which would adorn and enrich life should grow up by degrees. And we may infer
 30 that in political institutions the same rule holds. Egypt³³ witnesses to the antiquity of all these things, for the Egyptians appear to be of all people the most ancient; and they have laws and a regular constitution existing from time immemorial. We should therefore make the
 35 best use of what has been already discovered, and try to supply defects.

I have already remarked that the land ought to belong to those who possess arms and have a share in the government,³⁴ and that the husbandmen ought to be a class distinct from them; and I have determined what should be the extent and nature of the territory. Let me proceed to discuss the distribution of the land, and the character of
 40 the agricultural class; for I do not think that property
 1330^a ought to be common, as some maintain,³⁵ but only that by friendly consent there should be a common use of it; and that no citizen should be in want of subsistence.

As to common meals, there is a general agreement that a well-ordered city should have them; and we will hereafter explain what are our own reasons for taking this
 5 view.³⁶ They ought, however, to be open to all the citizens.³⁷ And yet it is not easy for the poor to contribute the requisite sum out of their private means, and to provide also for their household. The expense of religious worship
 10 should likewise be a public charge. The land must there-

³³ Cp. *Metaph.* i. 981^b 23; *Meteor.* i. 14. 352^b 19; Plato, *Timaeus*, 22 B; *Laws*, ii. 656, 657.

³⁴ 1328^b 33-1329^a 2, 1329^a 17-26, 1326^b 26-32.

³⁵ Cp. ii. 5, *Rep.* iii. 416 D.

³⁶ Aristotle does not give any explanation in the *Politics*.

³⁷ Cp. ii. 1271^a 28.

fore be divided into two parts, one public and the other private, and each part should be subdivided, part of the public land being appropriated to the service of the Gods, and the other part used to defray the cost of the common meals; while of the private land, part should be near the border, and the other near the city, so that, each citizen having two lots, they may all of them have land in both places; there is justice and fairness in such a division, and it tends to inspire unanimity among the people in their border wars. Where there is not this arrangement, some of them are too ready to come to blows with their neighbours, while others are so cautious that they quite lose the sense of honour. Wherefore there is a law in some places which forbids those who dwell near the border to take part in public deliberations about wars with neighbours, on the ground that their interests will pervert their judgment. For the reasons already mentioned, then, the land should be divided in the manner described. The very best thing of all would be that the husbandmen should be slaves taken from among men who are not all of the same race³⁸ and not spirited, for if they have no spirit they will be better suited for their work, and there will be no danger of their making a revolution. The next best thing would be that they should be Perioeci of foreign race,³⁹ and of a like inferior nature; some of them should be the slaves of individuals, and employed in the private estates of men of property, the remainder should be the property of the state and employed on the common land.⁴⁰ I will hereafter explain⁴¹ what is the proper treatment of slaves, and why it is expedient that liberty should be always held out to them as the reward of their services.

³⁸ Cp. Plato, *Laws*, vi. 777 C, D.

³⁹ Cp. 1329^a 26.

⁴⁰ Cp. ii. 1267^b 16.

⁴¹ A. does not do so in the *Politics*, but Cp. *Oec.* 1344^b 15.

11 We have already said that the city should be open
 35 to the land and to the sea,⁴² and to the whole country as
 far as possible. In respect of the place itself our wish
 would be that its situation should be fortunate in four
 things. The first, health—this is a necessity: cities which
 40 lie towards the east, and are blown upon by winds com-
 ing from the east, are the healthiest; next in healthful-
 ness are those which are sheltered from the north wind,
 for they have a milder winter. The site of the city should
 1830^b likewise be convenient both for political administration
 and for war. With a view to the latter it should afford
 easy egress to the citizens, and at the same time be inac-
 cessible and difficult of capture to enemies.⁴³ There
 should be a natural abundance of springs and fountains
 5 in the town, or, if there is a deficiency of them, great
 reservoirs may be established for the collection of rain-
 water, such as will not fail when the inhabitants are cut
 off from the country by war. Special care should be taken
 of the health of the inhabitants, which will depend chiefly
 on the healthiness of the locality and of the quarter to
 10 which they are exposed, and secondly, on the use of pure
 water; this latter point is by no means a secondary con-
 sideration. For the elements which we use most and
 oftenest for the support of the body contribute most to
 health, and among these are water and air. Wherefore, in
 15 all wise states, if there is a want of pure water, and the
 supply is not all equally good, the drinking water ought to
 be separated from that which is used for other purposes.

As to strongholds, what is suitable to different forms of
 20 government varies: thus an acropolis is suited to an oli-
 garchy or a monarchy, but a plain to a democracy;
 neither to an aristocracy, but rather a number of strong
 places. The arrangement of private houses is considered

⁴² 1327^a 4-40.⁴³ Repetition of 1326^b 40.

to be more agreeable and generally more convenient, if the streets are regularly laid out after the modern fashion which Hippodamus ⁴⁴ introduced, but for security in war ²⁵ the antiquated mode of building, which made it difficult for strangers to get out of a town and for assailants to find their way in, is preferable. A city should therefore adopt both plans of building: it is possible to arrange the houses irregularly, as husbandmen plant their vines in what are called 'clumps'. The whole town should not be ³⁰ laid out in straight lines, but only certain quarters and regions; thus security and beauty will be combined.

As to walls, those who say ⁴⁵ that cities making any pretension to military virtue should not have them, are quite out of date in their notions; and they may see the cities which prided themselves on this fancy confuted ³⁵ by facts. True, there is little courage shown in seeking for safety behind a rampart when an enemy is similar in character and not much superior in number; but the superiority of the besiegers may be and often is too much both for ordinary human valour and for that which is found only in a few; and if they are to be saved and to ⁴⁰ escape defeat and outrage, the strongest wall will be the truest soldierly precaution, more especially now that ^{1331^a} missiles and siege engines have been brought to such perfection. To have no walls would be as foolish as to choose a site for a town in an exposed country, and to level the heights; or as if an individual were to leave his ⁵ house unwallled, lest the inmates should become cowards. Nor must we forget that those who have their cities surrounded by walls may either take advantage of them or not, but cities which are unwallled have no choice.

If our conclusions are just, not only should cities have ¹⁰

⁴⁴ Cp. ii. 1267^b 22.

⁴⁵ Cp. Plato, *Laws*, vi. 778 D.

walls, but care should be taken to make them ornamental, as well as useful for warlike purposes, and adapted to resist modern inventions. For as the assailants of a city do all they can to gain an advantage, so the defenders should make use of any means of defence which have been already discovered, and should devise and invent others, for when men are well prepared no enemy even thinks of attacking them.

12 As the walls are to be divided by guard-houses and towers built at suitable intervals, and the body of citizens must be distributed at common tables,⁴⁶ the idea will naturally occur that we should establish some of the common tables in the guard-houses. These might be arranged as has been suggested; while the principal common tables of the magistrates will occupy a suitable place, and there also will be the buildings appropriated to religious worship except in the case of those rites which the law or the Pythian oracle has restricted to a special locality.⁴⁷ The site should be a spot seen far and wide, which gives due elevation to virtue and towers over the neighbourhood. Below this spot should be established an agora, such as that which the Thessalians call the 'freemen's agora'; from this all trade should be excluded, and no mechanic, husbandman, or any such person allowed to enter, unless he be summoned by the magistrates. It would be a charming use of the place, if the gymnastic exercises of the elder men were performed there. For in this noble practice different ages should be separated, and some of the magistrates should stay with the boys, while the grown-up men remain with the magistrates; for the presence of the magistrates is the best

⁴⁶ Cp. 1330^a 3.

⁴⁷ Cp. Plato, *Laws*, v. 738 B-D, vi. 759 C, 778 C, viii. 848 D-E.

mode of inspiring true modesty and ingenuous fear. There should also be a traders' agora, distinct and apart 1331^b from the other, in a situation which is convenient for the reception of goods both by sea and land.

But in speaking of the magistrates we must not forget another section of the citizens, viz. the priests, for 5 whom public tables should likewise be provided in their proper place near the temples. The magistrates who deal with contracts, indictments, summonses, and the like, and those who have the care of the agora and of the city respectively, ought to be established near an agora and 10 some public place of meeting; the neighbourhood of the traders' agora will be a suitable spot; the upper agora we devote to the life of leisure, the other is intended for the necessities of trade.

The same order should prevail in the country, for there too the magistrates, called by some 'Inspectors of 15 Forests' and by others 'Wardens of the Country', must have guard-houses and common tables while they are on duty; temples should also be scattered throughout the country, dedicated, some to Gods, and some to heroes.

But it would be a waste of time for us to linger over details like these. The difficulty is not in imagining but in carrying them out. We may talk about them as much 21 as we like, but the execution of them will depend upon fortune. Wherefore let us say no more about these matters for the present.

13 Returning to the constitution itself, let us seek to determine out of what and what sort of elements the 25 state which is to be happy and well-governed should be composed. There are two things in which all well-being consists: one of them is the choice of a right end and aim of action, and the other the discovery of the actions

30 which are means towards it; for the means and the end may agree or disagree. Sometimes the right end is set before men, but in practice they fail to attain it; in other cases they are successful in all the means, but they propose to themselves a bad end; and sometimes they fail in both. Take, for example, the art of medicine; physicians do not always understand the nature of
 35 health, and also the means which they use may not effect the desired end. In all arts and sciences both the end and the means should be equally within our control.

The happiness and well-being which all men manifestly desire, some have the power of attaining, but to others, from some accident or defect of nature, the attainment of them is not granted; for a good life requires
 1332^a a supply of external goods, in a less degree when men are in a good state, in a greater degree when they are in a lower state. Others again, who possess the conditions of happiness, go utterly wrong from the first in the pursuit of it. But since our object is to discover the best form
 5 of government, that, namely, under which a city will be best governed, and since the city is best governed which has the greatest opportunity of obtaining happiness, it is evident that we must clearly ascertain the nature of happiness.

We maintain, and have said in the *Ethics*,⁴⁸ if the arguments there adduced are of any value, that happiness is the realization and perfect exercise of virtue, and this
 10 not conditional, but absolute. And I used the term 'conditional' to express that which is indispensable, and 'absolute' to express that which is good in itself. Take the case of just actions; just punishments and chastisements do indeed spring from a good principle, but they are good only because we cannot do without them—it would

⁴⁸ *Nic. Eth.* i. 1098^a 16, x. 1176^b 4; and Cp. 1328^a 37.

be better that neither individuals nor states should need anything of the sort—but actions which aim at honour 15 and advantage are absolutely the best. The conditional action is only the choice of a lesser evil; whereas these are the foundation and creation of good. A good man may make the best even of poverty and disease, and the other ills of life; but he can only attain happiness under 20 the opposite conditions⁴⁹ (for this also has been determined in accordance with ethical arguments,⁵⁰ that the good man is he for whom, because he is virtuous, the things that are absolutely good are good; it is also plain that his use of these goods must be virtuous and in the 25 absolute sense good). This makes men fancy that external goods are the cause of happiness, yet we might as well say that a brilliant performance on the lyre was to be attributed to the instrument and not to the skill of the performer.

It follows then from what has been said that some things the legislator must find ready to his hand in a state, others he must provide. And therefore we can only say: May our state be constituted in such a manner as to be blessed with the goods of which fortune disposes (for we acknowledge her power): whereas virtue and 30 goodness in the state are not a matter of chance but the result of knowledge and purpose. A city can be virtuous only when the citizens who have a share in the government are virtuous, and in our state all the citizens share in the government; let us then inquire how a man be- 35 comes virtuous. For even if we could suppose the citizen body to be virtuous, without each of them being so, yet the latter would be better, for in the virtue of each the virtue of all is involved.

⁴⁹ *Nic. Eth.* i. 1100^b 22, 1101^a 13.

⁵⁰ *Nic. Eth.* iii. 1113^a 22—^b1; *E. E.* vii. 1248^b 26; *M. M.* ii. 1207^b 31.

There are three things which make men good and virtuous; these are nature, habit, rational principle.⁵¹ In the first place, every one must be born a man and not some other animal; so, too, he must have a certain character, both of body and soul. But some qualities there is no use in having at birth, for they are altered by habit, and there are some gifts which by nature are made to be turned by habit to good or bad. Animals lead for the most part a life of nature, although in lesser particulars some are influenced by habit as well. Man has rational principle, in addition, and man only. Wherefore nature, habit, rational principle must be in harmony with one another; for they do not always agree; men do many things against habit and nature, if rational principle persuades them that they ought. We have already determined what natures are likely to be most easily moulded by the hands of the legislator.⁵² All else is the work of education; we learn some things by habit and some by instruction.

14 Since every political society is composed of rulers and subjects let us consider whether the relations of one to the other should interchange or be permanent.⁵³ For the education of the citizens will necessarily vary with the answer given to this question. Now, if some men excelled others in the same degree in which gods and heroes are supposed to excel mankind in general (having in the first place a great advantage even in their bodies, and secondly in their minds), so that the superiority of the governors was undisputed and patent to their subjects, it would clearly be better that once for all the one class should rule and the others serve.⁵⁴ But since this

⁵¹ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* x. 1179^b 20.

⁵³ Cp. iii. 1279^a 8.

⁵² 1327^b 36.

⁵⁴ Cp. i. 1254^b 16, 1284^a 3.

is unattainable, and kings have no marked superiority over their subjects, such as Scylax affirms to be found among the Indians, it is obviously necessary on many 25 grounds that all the citizens alike should take their turn of governing and being governed. Equality consists in the same treatment of similar persons, and no government can stand which is not founded upon justice. For if the government be unjust every one in the country unites with the governed in the desire to have a revolution, and it is an impossibility that the members of the 30 government can be so numerous as to be stronger than all their enemies put together. Yet that governors should excel their subjects is undeniable. How all this is to be effected, and in what way they will respectively share in the government, the legislator has to consider. The 35 subject has been already mentioned.⁵⁵ Nature herself has provided the distinction when she made a difference between old and young within the same species, of whom she fitted the one to govern and the other to be governed. No one takes offence at being governed when he is young, nor does he think himself better than his governors, especially if he will enjoy the same privilege when he 40 reaches the required age.

We conclude that from one point of view governors and governed are identical, and from another different. And therefore their education must be the same and also 1333^a different. For he who would learn to command well must, as men say, first of all learn to obey.⁵⁶ As I observed in the first part of this treatise, there is one rule which is for the sake of the rulers and another rule which is for the sake of the ruled; ⁵⁷ the former is a despotic, the latter a 5 free government. Some commands differ not in the thing

⁵⁵ 1329^a 2-17.

⁵⁷ iii. 1278^b 32-1279^a 8, Cp. 1277^a 33-^b 30.

⁵⁶ Cp. iii. 1277^b 9.

commanded, but in the intention with which they are imposed. Wherefore, many apparently menial offices are an honour to the free youth by whom they are performed; for actions do not differ as honourable or dishonourable in themselves so much as in the end and intention of them. But since we say⁵⁸ that the virtue of the citizen and ruler is the same as that of the good man, and that the same person must first be a subject and then a ruler, the legislator has to see that they become good men, and by what means this may be accomplished, and what is the end of the perfect life.

Now the soul of man is divided into two parts, one of which has a rational principle in itself, and the other, not having a rational principle in itself, is able to obey such a principle.⁵⁹ And we call a man in any way good because he has the virtues of these two parts. In which of them the end is more likely to be found is no matter of doubt to those who adopt our division; for in the world both of nature and of art the inferior always exists for the sake of the better or superior, and the better or superior is that which has a rational principle. This principle, too, in our ordinary way of speaking, is divided into two kinds, for there is a practical and a speculative principle.⁶⁰ This part, then, must evidently be similarly divided. And there must be a corresponding division of actions; the actions of the naturally better part are to be preferred by those who have it in their power to attain to two out of the three or to all, for that is always to every one the most eligible which is the highest attainable by him. The whole of life is further divided into two parts, business and leisure,⁶¹ war and peace, and of actions some aim at what is necessary and useful, and

⁵⁸ Cp. iii. 4, 5.

⁶⁰ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* vi. 1139^a 6.

⁵⁹ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* i. 1102^b 28.

⁶¹ *Nic. Eth.* x. 1177^b 4.

some at what is honourable. And the preference given to one or the other class of actions must necessarily be like the preference given to one or other part of the soul and its actions over the other; there must be war for the sake of peace, business for the sake of leisure, things useful and necessary for the sake of things honourable. All these points the statesman should keep in view when he frames his laws; he should consider the parts of the soul and their functions, and above all the better and the end; he should also remember the diversities of human lives and actions. For men must be able to engage in business and go to war, but leisure and peace are better; they must do what is necessary and indeed what is useful, but what is honourable is better. On such principles children and persons of every age which requires education should be trained. Whereas even the Hellenes of the present day who are reputed to be best governed, and the legislators who gave them their constitutions, do not appear to have framed their governments with a regard to the best end, or to have given them laws and education with a view to all the virtues, but in a vulgar spirit have fallen back on those which promised to be more useful and profitable. Many modern writers have taken a similar view: they commend the Lacedaemonian constitution, and praise the legislator for making conquest and war his sole aim,⁶² a doctrine which may be refuted by argument and has long ago been refuted by facts. For most men desire empire in the hope of accumulating the goods of fortune; and on this ground Thibron and all those who have written about the Lacedaemonian constitution have praised their legislator, because the Lacedaemonians, by being trained to meet dangers, gained great power. But surely they are not a happy people now that their empire has

⁶² Cp. Plato, *Laws*, i. 628, 638.

passed away, nor was their legislator right. How ridiculous is the result, if, while they are continuing in the observance of his laws and no one interferes with them, they
 25 have lost the better part of life! These writers further err about the sort of government which the legislator should approve, for the government of freemen is nobler and implies more virtue than despotic government.⁶³ Neither is a city to be deemed happy or a legislator to be
 30 praised because he trains his citizens to conquer and obtain dominion over their neighbours, for there is great evil in this. On a similar principle any citizen who could, should obviously try to obtain the power in his own state—the crime which the Lacedaemonians accuse king Pausanias of attempting,⁶⁴ although he had so great honour
 35 already. No such principle and no law having this object is either statesmanlike or useful or right. For the same things are best both for individuals and for states, and these are the things which the legislator ought to implant in the minds of his citizens. Neither should men study war with a view to the enslavement of those who
 40 do not deserve to be enslaved; but first of all they should provide against their own enslavement, and in the second place obtain empire for the good of the governed,
 1334^a and not for the sake of exercising a general despotism, and in the third place they should seek to be masters only over those who deserve to be slaves. Facts, as well
 5 as arguments, prove that the legislator should direct all his military and other measures to the provision of leisure and the establishment of peace. For most of these military states are safe only while they are at war,⁶⁵ but fall when they have acquired their empire; like unused
 10 iron they lose their temper in time of peace. And for this

⁶³ Cp. i. 1254^a 25.⁶⁵ Cp. ii. 1271^b 3.⁶⁴ Cp. v. 1301^b 20, 1307^a 3.

the legislator is to blame, he never having taught them how to lead the life of peace.

15 Since the end of individuals and of states is the same, the end of the best man and of the best constitution must also be the same; it is therefore evident that there ought to exist in both of them the virtues of leisure; for peace, as has been often repeated,⁶⁶ is the end of war, 15 and leisure of toil. But leisure and cultivation may be promoted, not only by those virtues which are practised in leisure, but also by some of those which are useful to business.⁶⁷ For many necessities of life have to be supplied before we can have leisure. Therefore a city must be temperate and brave, and able to endure: for 20 truly, as the proverb says, 'There is no leisure for slaves,' and those who cannot face danger like men are the slaves of any invader. Courage and endurance are required for business and philosophy for leisure, temperance and justice for both, and more especially in times of peace and 25 leisure, for war compels men to be just and temperate, whereas the enjoyment of good fortune and the leisure which comes with peace tend to make them insolent. Those then who seem to be the best-off and to be in the possession of every good, have special need of justice and temperance—for example, those (if such there be, as the 30 poets say) who dwell in the Islands of the Blest; they above all will need philosophy and temperance and justice, and all the more the more leisure they have, living in the midst of abundance. There is no difficulty in seeing why the state that would be happy and good ought 35 to have these virtues. If it be disgraceful in men not to

⁶⁶ 1333^a 35, 1334^a 2.

⁶⁷ i. e. 'not only by some of the speculative but also by some of the practical virtues'.

be able to use the goods of life, it is peculiarly disgraceful not to be able to use them in time of leisure—to show excellent qualities in action and war, and when they have peace and leisure to be no better than slaves.

40 Wherefore we should not practise virtue after the manner of the Lacedaemonians.⁶⁸ For they, while agreeing with other men in their conception of the highest goods,
1334^b differ from the rest of mankind in thinking that they are to be obtained by the practice of a single virtue. And since [they think] these goods and the enjoyment of
5 them greater than the enjoyment derived from the virtues . . . and that [it should be practised] for its own sake, is evident from what has been said; we must now consider how and by what means it is to be attained.

We have already determined that nature and habit and rational principle are required,⁶⁹ and, of these, the proper *nature* of the citizens has also been defined by us.⁷⁰ But we have still to consider whether the training of early life is to be that of rational principle or habit, for these two must accord, and when in accord they will
10 then form the best of harmonies. The rational principle may be mistaken and fail in attaining the highest ideal of life, and there may be a like evil influence of habit. Thus much is clear in the first place, that, as in all other things, birth implies an antecedent beginning,⁷¹ and that there are beginnings whose end is relative to a further end. Now, in men rational principle and mind are the end towards which nature strives,⁷² so that the birth and
15 moral discipline of the citizens ought to be ordered with a view to them. In the second place, as the soul and body

⁶⁸ Cp. ii. 1271^a 41.

⁷⁰ c. 7.

⁶⁹ 1332^a 39 sqq.

⁷¹ i. e. the union of the parents.

⁷² i. e. the birth of the offspring, which is the end of the union of the parents, points to a further end, the development of mind.

are two, we see also that there are two parts of the soul, the rational and the irrational, and two corresponding states—reason and appetite. And as the body is prior 20 in order of generation to the soul, so the irrational is prior to the rational. The proof is that anger and wishing and desire are implanted in children from their very birth, but reason and understanding are developed as they grow older. Wherefore, the care of the body ought to 25 precede that of the soul, and the training of the appetitive part should follow: none the less our care of it must be for the sake of the reason, and our care of the body for the sake of the soul.

16 Since the legislator should begin by considering how the frames of the children whom he is rearing may be as 30 good as possible, his first care will be about marriage—at what age should his citizens marry, and who are fit to marry? In legislating on this subject he ought to consider the persons and the length of their life, that their procreative life may terminate at the same period, and that 35 they may not differ in their bodily powers, as will be the case if the man is still able to beget children while the woman is unable to bear them, or the woman able to bear while the man is unable to beget, for from these causes arise quarrels and differences between married persons. Secondly, he must consider the time at which the children will succeed to their parents; there ought not to be 40 too great an interval of age, for then the parents will be too old to derive any pleasure from their affection, or to be of any use to them. Nor ought they to be too nearly 1335^a of an age; to youthful marriages there are many objections—the children will be wanting in respect to the parents, who will seem to be their contemporaries, and disputes will arise in the management of the household.

Thirdly, and this is the point from which we digressed,⁷³
5 the legislator must mould to his will the frames of newly-born children. Almost all these objects may be secured by attention to one point. Since the time of generation is commonly limited within the age of seventy years in the case of a man, and of fifty in the case of a woman, the
10 commencement of the union should conform to these periods. The union of male and female when too young is bad for the procreation of children; in all other animals the offspring of the young are small and ill-developed, and with a tendency to produce female children,
15 and therefore also in man, as is proved by the fact that in those cities in which men and women are accustomed to marry young, the people are small and weak; in childbirth also younger women suffer more, and more of them die; some persons say that this was the meaning of the response once given to the Troezenians⁷⁴—the oracle
20 really meant that many died because they married too young; it had nothing to do with the ingathering of the harvest. It also conduces to temperance not to marry too soon; for women who marry early are apt to be wanton; and in men too the bodily frame is stunted if
25 they marry while the seed is growing (for there is a time when the growth of the seed, also, ceases, or continues to but a slight extent). Women should marry when they are about eighteen years of age, and men at seven and thirty; then they are in the prime of life, and the decline
30 in the powers of both will coincide. Further, the children, if their birth takes place soon, as may reasonably be expected, will succeed in the beginning of their prime, when the fathers are already in the decline of life, and
35 have nearly reached their term of three-score years and ten.

⁷³ 1334^b 29 sqq.

⁷⁴ 'Plough not the young field'.

Thus much of the age proper for marriage: the season of the year should also be considered; according to our present custom, people generally limit marriage to the season of winter, and they are right. The precepts of physicians and natural philosophers about generation 40 should also be studied by the parents themselves; the physicians give good advice about the favourable conditions of the body, and the natural philosophers about 1335^b the winds; of which they prefer the north to the south.

What constitution in the parent is most advantageous to the offspring is a subject which we will consider more carefully ⁷⁵ when we speak of the education of children, and we will only make a few general remarks at present. The constitution of an athlete is not suited to the life 5 of a citizen, or to health, or to the procreation of children, any more than the valetudinarian or exhausted constitution, but one which is in a mean between them. A man's constitution should be inured to labour, but not to labour which is excessive or of one sort only, such as is practised by athletes; he should be capable of all the actions 10 of a freeman. These remarks apply equally to both parents.

Women who are with child should be careful of themselves; they should take exercise and have a nourishing diet. The first of these prescriptions the legislator will 15 easily carry into effect by requiring that they shall take a walk daily to some temple, where they can worship the gods who preside over birth.⁷⁶ Their minds, however, unlike their bodies, they ought to keep quiet, for the offspring derive their natures from their mothers as plants do from the earth.

As to the exposure and rearing of children, let there be 20 a law that no *deformed* child shall live, but that on the

⁷⁵ A. does not actually do so.

⁷⁶ Cp. Plato, *Laws*, vii. 789 E.

ground of an *excess* in the number of children, if the established customs of the state forbid this (for in our state population has a limit), no child is to be exposed, but when couples have children in excess, let abortion
25 be procured before sense and life have begun; what may or may not be lawfully done in these cases depends on the question of life and sensation.

And now, having determined at what ages men and women are to begin their union, let us also determine how long they shall continue to beget and bear offspring for the state; men who are too old, like men who are too
30 young, produce children who are defective in body and mind; the children of very old men are weakly. The limit, then, should be the age which is the prime of their intelligence, and this in most persons, according to the notion of some poets who measure life by periods of seven years,
35 is about fifty; at four or five years later, they should cease from having families; and from that time forward only cohabit with one another for the sake of health; or for some similar reason.

As to adultery, let it be held disgraceful, in general,
40 for any man or woman to be found in any way unfaithful when they are married, and called husband and wife.
1336^a If during the time of bearing children anything of the sort occur, let the guilty person be punished with a loss of privileges in proportion to the offence.⁷⁷

17 After the children have been born, the manner of
5 rearing them may be supposed to have a great effect on their bodily strength. It would appear from the example of animals, and of those nations who desire to create the military habit, that the food which has most milk in it is best suited to human beings; but the less wine the

⁷⁷ Cp. *Laws*, viii. 841 D, E.

better, if they would escape diseases. Also all the motions to which children can be subjected at their early age are very useful. But in order to preserve their tender limbs from distortion, some nations have had recourse to mechanical appliances which straighten their bodies. To accustom children to the cold from their earliest years is also an excellent practice, which greatly conduces to health, and hardens them for military service. Hence many barbarians have a custom of plunging their children at birth into a cold stream; others, like the Celts, clothe them in a light wrapper only. For human nature should be early habituated to endure all which by habit it can be made to endure; but the process must be gradual. And children, from their natural warmth, may be easily trained to bear cold. Such care should attend them in the first stage of life.

The next period lasts to the age of five; during this no demand should be made upon the child for study or labour, lest its growth be impeded; and there should be sufficient motion to prevent the limbs from being inactive. This can be secured, among other ways, by amusement, but the amusement should not be vulgar or tiring or effeminate. The Directors of Education, as they are termed, should be careful what tales or stories the children hear,⁷⁸ for all such things are designed to prepare the way for the business of later life, and should be for the most part imitations of the occupations which they will hereafter pursue in earnest.⁷⁹ Those are wrong who in their laws attempt to check the loud crying and screaming of children, for these contribute towards their growth, and, in a manner, exercise their bodies.⁸⁰ Straining the voice has a strengthening effect similar to that pro-

⁷⁸ Plato, *Rep.* ii. 377 ff.

⁷⁹ Plato, *Laws*, i. 643.

⁸⁰ Plato, *Laws*, vii. 792 A.

40 duced by the retention of the breath in violent exertions.
The Directors of Education should have an eye to their
bringing up, and in particular should take care that they
are left as little as possible with slaves. For until they are
1336^b seven years old they must live at home; and therefore,
even at this early age, it is to be expected that they should
acquire a taint of meanness from what they hear and see.
Indeed, there is nothing which the legislator should be
5 more careful to drive away than indecency of speech;
for the light utterance of shameful words leads soon to
shameful actions. The young especially should never be
allowed to repeat or hear anything of the sort. A free-
man who is found saying or doing what is forbidden, if
10 he be too young as yet to have the privilege of reclining
at the public tables, should be disgraced and beaten, and
an elder person degraded as his slavish conduct deserves.
And since we do not allow improper language, clearly we
should also banish pictures or speeches from the stage
15 which are indecent. Let the rulers take care that there
be no image or picture representing unseemly actions,
except in the temples of those Gods at whose festivals
the law permits even ribaldry, and whom the law also
permits to be worshipped by persons of mature age on
behalf of themselves, their children, and their wives.
But the legislator should not allow youth to be specta-
20 tors of iambi or of comedy until they are of an age to
sit at the public tables and to drink strong wine; by that
time education will have armed them against the evil
influences of such representations.

We have made these remarks in a cursory manner—
25 they are enough for the present occasion; but here-
after⁸¹ we will return to the subject and after a fuller
discussion determine whether such liberty should or

⁸¹ An unfulfilled promise.

should not be granted, and in what way granted, if at all. Theodorus, the tragic actor, was quite right in saying that he would not allow any other actor, not even if he 30 were quite second-rate, to enter before himself, because the spectators grew fond of the voices which they first heard. And the same principle applies universally to association with things as well as with persons, for we always like best whatever comes first. And therefore youth should be kept strangers to all that is bad, and especially 35 to things which suggest vice or hate. When the five years have passed away, during the two following years they must look on at the pursuits which they are hereafter to learn. There are two periods of life with reference to which education has to be divided, from seven to the age of puberty, and onwards to the age of one and twenty. The poets who divide ages by sevens⁸² are in the main 40 right: but we should observe the divisions actually made 1337^a by nature; for the deficiencies of nature are what art and education seek to fill up.

Let us then first inquire if any regulations are to be laid down about children, and secondly, whether the care of them should be the concern of the state or of private 5 individuals, which latter is in our own day the common custom, and in the third place, what these regulations should be.

⁸² Cp. 1335^b 33.

BOOK VIII

1 No one will doubt that the legislator should direct his attention above all to the education of youth; for the neglect of education does harm to the constitution. The citizen should be moulded to suit the form of government under which he lives.¹ For each government has
 15 a peculiar character which originally formed and which continues to preserve it. The character of democracy creates democracy, and the character of oligarchy creates oligarchy; and always the better the character, the better the government.

Again, for the exercise of any faculty or art a previous
 20 training and habituation are required; clearly therefore for the practice of virtue. And since the whole city has one end, it is manifest that education should be one and the same for all, and that it should be public, and not private—not as at present, when every one looks
 25 after his own children separately, and gives them separate instruction of the sort which he thinks best; the training in things which are of common interest should be the same for all. Neither must we suppose that any one of the citizens belongs to himself, for they all belong to the state, and are each of them a part of the state, and
 30 the care of each part is inseparable from the care of the

¹ Cp. v. 1310^a 12–36.

whole. In this particular as in some others the Lacedaemonians are to be praised, for they take the greatest pains about their children, and make education the business of the state.²

2 That education should be regulated by law and should be an affair of state is not to be denied, but what should be the character of this public education, and how young persons should be educated, are questions which remain to be considered. As things are, there is disagreement about the subjects. For mankind are by no means 35 agreed about the things to be taught, whether we look to virtue or the best life. Neither is it clear whether education is more concerned with intellectual or with moral virtue. The existing practice is perplexing; no one knows on what principle we should proceed—should the useful 40 in life, or should virtue, or should the higher knowledge, be the aim of our training; all three opinions have been 1337' entertained. Again, about the means there is no agreement; for different persons, starting with different ideas about the nature of virtue, naturally disagree about the practice of it. There can be no doubt that children should be taught those useful things which are really necessary, but not all useful things; for occupations are divided into 5 liberal and illiberal; and to young children should be imparted only such kinds of knowledge as will be useful to them without vulgarizing them. And any occupation, art, or science, which makes the body or soul or mind of 10 the freeman less fit for the practice or exercise of virtue, is vulgar; wherefore we call those arts vulgar which tend to deform the body, and likewise all paid employments, for they absorb and degrade the mind. There are also some liberal arts quite proper for a freeman to acquire, 15

² Cp. *Nic. Eth.* x. 1180^a 24.

but only in a certain degree, and if he attend to them too closely, in order to attain perfection in them, the same evil effects will follow. The object also which a man sets before him makes a great difference; if he does or learns anything for his own sake³ or for the sake of his friends, or with a view to excellence, the action will not appear
 20 illiberal; but if done for the sake of others, the very same action will be thought menial and servile. The received subjects of instruction, as I have already remarked,⁴ are partly of a liberal and partly of an illiberal character.

3 The customary branches of education are in number four; they are—(1) reading and writing, (2) gymnastic
 25 exercises, (3) music, to which is sometimes added (4) drawing. Of these, reading and writing and drawing are regarded as useful for the purposes of life in a variety of ways, and gymnastic exercises are thought to infuse courage. Concerning music a doubt may be raised—in our own day most men cultivate it for the sake of pleasure, but originally it was included in education, because
 30 nature herself, as has been often said,⁵ requires that we should be able, not only to work well, but to use leisure well; for, as I must repeat once again, the first principle of all action is leisure. Both are required, but leisure is better than occupation and is its end; and therefore the question must be asked, what ought we to do when at
 35 leisure? Clearly we ought not to be amusing ourselves, for then amusement would be the end of life. But if this is inconceivable, and amusement is needed more amid serious occupations than at other times (for he who is hard at work has need of relaxation, and amusement gives relaxation, whereas occupation is always accom-

³ Cp. iii. 1277^b 3.

⁴ a³⁹—b³.

⁵ ii. 1271^a 41 sqq., vii. 1333^a 16—1334^b 3; *Nic. Eth.* x. 6.

panied with exertion and effort, we should introduce 40
 amusements only at suitable times, and they should be
 our medicines, for the emotion which they create in the
 soul is a relaxation, and from the pleasure we obtain
 rest. But leisure of itself gives pleasure and happiness 1338^a
 and enjoyment of life, which are experienced, not by the
 busy man, but by those who have leisure. For he who
 is occupied has in view some end which he has not at- 5
 tained; but happiness is an end, since all men deem it
 to be accompanied with pleasure and not with pain. This
 pleasure, however, is regarded differently by different
 persons, and varies according to the habit of individuals;
 the pleasure of the best man is the best, and springs
 from the noblest sources. It is clear then that there are
 branches of learning and education which we must study 10
 merely with a view to leisure spent in intellectual activity,
 and these are to be valued for their own sake; whereas
 those kinds of knowledge which are useful in business
 are to be deemed necessary, and exist for the sake of
 other things. And therefore our fathers admitted music
 into education, not on the ground either of its necessity
 or utility, for it is not necessary, nor indeed useful in the 15
 same manner as reading and writing, which are useful
 in money-making, in the management of a household,
 in the acquisition of knowledge and in political life,
 nor like drawing, useful for a more correct judgement of
 the works of artists, nor again like gymnastic, which 20
 gives health and strength; for neither of these is to be
 gained from music. There remains, then, the use of
 music for intellectual enjoyment in leisure; which is in
 fact evidently the reason of its introduction, this being
 one of the ways in which it is thought that a freeman
 should pass his leisure; as Homer says—

25 'But he who alone should be called ⁶ to the pleasant feast',
and afterwards he speaks of others whom he describes as
inviting

'The bard who would delight them all'.⁷

And in another place Odysseus says there is no better
way of passing life than when men's hearts are merry and

'The banqueters in the hall, sitting in order, hear the voice
of the minstrel'.⁸

30 It is evident, then, that there is a sort of education in
which parents should train their sons, not as being useful
or necessary, but because it is liberal or noble. Whether
this is of one kind only, or of more than one, and if so,
what they are, and how they are to be imparted, must
hereafter be determined.⁹ Thus much we are now in a
35 position to say, that the ancients witness to us; for their
opinion may be gathered from the fact that music is one
of the received and traditional branches of education.
Further, it is clear that children should be instructed in
some useful things—for example, in reading and writing
—not only for their usefulness, but also because many
40 other sorts of knowledge are acquired through them.
With a like view they may be taught drawing, not to
prevent their making mistakes in their own purchases,
or in order that they may not be imposed upon in the
1338^b buying or selling of articles, but perhaps rather because
it makes them judges of the beauty of the human form.
To be always seeking after the useful does not become
free and exalted souls.¹⁰ Now it is clear that in education
5 practice must be used before theory, and the body be

⁶ The line does not occur in our text of Homer, but in Aristotle's text it probably came instead of, or after, *Od.* xvii. 383.

⁷ *Od.* xvii. 385.

⁹ An unfulfilled promise.

⁸ *Od.* ix. 7

¹⁰ Cp. Plato, *Rep.* vii. 525 ff.

trained before the mind; and therefore boys should be handed over to the trainer, who creates in them the proper habit of body, and to the wrestling-master, who teaches them their exercises.

4 Of those states which in our own day seem to take the greatest care of children, some aim at producing in them an athletic habit, but they only injure their forms 10 and stunt their growth. Although the Lacedaemonians have not fallen into this mistake, yet they brutalize their children by laborious exercises which they think will make them courageous. But in truth, as we have often repeated,¹¹ education should not be exclusively, or prin- 15 cipally, directed to this end. And even if we suppose the Lacedaemonians to be right in their end, they do not attain it. For among barbarians and among animals courage is found associated, not with the greatest ferocity, but with a gentle and lion-like temper. There are many 20 races who are ready enough to kill and eat men, such as the Achaeans and Heniochi, who both live about the Black Sea; ¹² and there are other mainland tribes, as bad or worse, who all live by plunder, but have no courage. It is notorious that the Lacedaemonians themselves, 25 while they alone were assiduous in their laborious drill, were superior to others, but now they are beaten both in war and gymnastic exercises. For their ancient superiority did not depend on their mode of training their youth, but only on the circumstance that they trained them when their only rivals did not. Hence we may infer that what is noble, not what is brutal, should have the first place; no wolf or other wild animal will face a really 30 noble danger; such dangers are for the brave man.¹³ And

¹¹ ii. 1271^a 41-b10, vii. 1333^b 5 sqq., 1334^a 40 sqq.

¹² Cp. *Nic. Eth.* vii, 1148^b 21.

¹³ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* iii. 1115^a 29.

parents who devote their children to gymnastics while they neglect their necessary education, in reality vulgarize them; for they make them useful to the art of statesmanship in one quality only, and even in this the argument proves them to be inferior to others. We should judge the Lacedaemonians not from what they have been, but from what they are; for now they have rivals who compete with their education; formerly they had none.

It is an admitted principle, that gymnastic exercises should be employed in education, and that for children they should be of a lighter kind, avoiding severe diet or painful toil, lest the growth of the body be impaired. The evil of excessive training in early years is strikingly proved by the example of the Olympic victors; for not more than two or three of them have gained a prize both as boys and as men; their early training and severe gymnastic exercises exhausted their constitutions. When boyhood is over, three years should be spent in other studies; the period of life which follows may then be devoted to hard exercise and strict diet. Men ought not to labour at the same time with their minds and with their bodies; ¹⁴ for the two kinds of labour are opposed to one another; the labour of the body impedes the mind, and the labour of the mind the body.

Concerning music there are some questions which we have already raised; ¹⁵ these we may now resume and carry further; and our remarks will serve as a prelude to this or any other discussion of the subject. It is not easy to determine the nature of music, or why any one should have a knowledge of it. Shall we say, for the sake of amusement and relaxation, like sleep or drinking,

¹⁴ Cp. Plato, *Rep.* vii. 537 B.

¹⁵ 1337^b 27-1338^a 30.

which are not good in themselves, but are pleasant, and at the same time 'make care to cease', as Euripides says? And for this end men also appoint music, and make use of all three alike—sleep, drinking, music—to which some 20 add dancing. Or shall we argue that music conduces to virtue, on the ground that it can form our minds and habituate us to true pleasures as our bodies are made by gymnastic to be of a certain character? Or shall we say 25 that it contributes to the enjoyment of leisure and mental cultivation, which is a third alternative? Now obviously youths are not to be instructed with a view to their amusement, for learning is no amusement, but is accompanied with pain. Neither is intellectual enjoyment suitable to boys of that age, for it is the end, and that which 30 is imperfect cannot attain the perfect or end. But perhaps it may be said that boys learn music for the sake of the amusement which they will have when they are grown up. If so, why should they learn themselves, and not, like the Persian and Median kings, enjoy the pleasure and instruction which is derived from hearing others? 35 (for surely persons who have made music the business and profession of their lives will be better performers than those who practise only long enough to learn). If they must learn music, on the same principle they should 40 learn cookery, which is absurd. And even granting that music may form the character, the objection still holds: why should we learn ourselves? Why cannot we attain true pleasure and form a correct judgement from hearing others, like the Lacedaemonians?—for they, without 1339^b learning music, nevertheless can correctly judge, as they say, of good and bad melodies. Or again, if music should be used to promote cheerfulness and refined intellectual enjoyment, the objection still remains—why should we 5 learn ourselves instead of enjoying the performances of

others? We may illustrate what we are saying by our conception of the Gods; for in the poets Zeus does not himself sing or play on the lyre. Nay, we call professional performers vulgar; no freeman would play or sing unless he were intoxicated or in jest. But these matters
10 may be left for the present.¹⁶

The first question is whether music is or is not to be a part of education. Of the three things mentioned in our discussion, which does it produce?—education or amusement or intellectual enjoyment, for it may be reckoned under all three, and seems to share in the nature of all
15 of them. Amusement is for the sake of relaxation, and relaxation is of necessity sweet, for it is the remedy of pain caused by toil; and intellectual enjoyment is universally acknowledged to contain an element not only of the noble but of the pleasant, for happiness is made up
20 of both. All men agree that music is one of the pleasantest things, whether with or without song; as Musaeus says,

‘Song is to mortals of all things the sweetest.’

Hence and with good reason it is introduced into social gatherings and entertainments, because it makes the
25 hearts of men glad: so that on this ground alone we may assume that the young ought to be trained in it. For innocent pleasures are not only in harmony with the perfect end of life, but they also provide relaxation. And whereas men rarely attain the end, but often rest by the way and amuse themselves, not only with a view to a
30 further end, but also for the pleasure’s sake, it may be well at times to let them find a refreshment in music. It sometimes happens that men make amusement the end, for the end probably contains some element of pleas-

¹⁶ Cp. c. 6.

ure, though not any ordinary or lower pleasure; but they mistake the lower for the higher, and in seeking for the one find the other, since every pleasure has a likeness to the end of action.¹⁷ For the end is not eligible for the 35 sake of any future good, nor do the pleasures which we have described exist for the sake of any future good but of the past, that is to say, they are the alleviation of past toils and pains. And we may infer this to be the reason why men seek happiness from these pleasures. 40

But music is pursued, not only as an alleviation of past toil, but also as providing recreation. And who can say whether, having this use, it may not also have a nobler one? In addition to this common pleasure, felt 1340^a and shared in by all (for the pleasure given by music is natural, and therefore adapted to all ages and characters), may it not have also some influence over the character and the soul? It must have such an influence if characters are affected by it. And that they are so affected is proved in many ways, and not least by the power which the songs of Olympus exercise; for beyond question they 10 inspire enthusiasm, and enthusiasm is an emotion of the ethical part of the soul. Besides, when men hear imitations, even apart from the rhythms and tunes themselves, their feelings move in sympathy. Since then music 15 is a pleasure, and virtue consists in rejoicing and loving and hating aright, there is clearly nothing which we are so much concerned to acquire and to cultivate as the power of forming right judgements, and of taking delight in good dispositions and noble actions.¹⁸ Rhythm and melody supply imitations of anger and gentleness, and also of courage and temperance, and of all the qualities 20 contrary to these, and of the other qualities of char-

¹⁷ Cp. *Nic. Eth.* vii. 1153^b 33.

¹⁸ Cp. Plato, *Rep.* iii. 401, 402; *Laws*, ii. 659 c-e.

acter, which hardly fall short of the actual affections, as we know from our own experience, for in listening to such strains our souls undergo a change. The habit of feeling pleasure or pain at mere representations is not far removed from the same feeling about realities; ¹⁹ for example, if any one delights in the sight of a statue for its beauty only, it necessarily follows that the sight of the original will be pleasant to him. The objects of no other sense, such as taste or touch, have any resemblance to moral qualities; in visible objects there is only a little, for there are figures which are of a moral character, but only to a slight extent, and all do not participate in the feeling about them. Again, figures and colours are not imitations, but signs, of moral habits, indications which the body gives of states of feeling. The connection of them with morals is slight, but in so far as there is any, young men should be taught to look, not at the works of Pauson, but at those of Polygnotus, ²⁰ or any other painter or sculptor who expresses moral ideas. On the other hand, even in mere melodies there is an imitation of character, for the musical modes differ essentially from one another, and those who hear them are differently affected by each. Some of them make men sad and grave, like the so-called Mixolydian, others enfeeble the mind, like the relaxed modes, another, again, produces a moderate and settled temper, which appears to be the peculiar effect of the Dorian; the Phrygian inspires enthusiasm. The whole subject has been well treated by philosophical writers ²¹ on this branch of education, and they confirm their arguments by facts. The same principles apply to rhythms; ²² some have a character of rest, others of motion, and of these latter again, some

¹⁹ Cp. Plato, *Rep.* iii. 395.

²¹ Cp. *Rep.* 398 E sqq.

²⁰ Cp. *Poet.* 1448^a 5, 1450^a 26.

²² *Rep.* iii. 399 E, 400.

have a more vulgar, others a nobler movement. Enough 10
has been said to show that music has a power of forming
the character, and should therefore be introduced into
the education of the young. The study is suited to the
stage of youth, for young persons will not, if they can 15
help, endure anything which is not sweetened by pleasure,
and music has a natural sweetness. There seems to
be in us a sort of affinity to musical modes and rhythms,
which makes some philosophers say that the soul is a
tuning, others, that it possesses tuning.

6 And now we have to determine the question which 20
has been already raised,²³ whether children should be
themselves taught to sing and play or not. Clearly there
is a considerable difference made in the character by the
actual practice of the art. It is difficult, if not impossible,
for those who do not perform to be good judges of the
performance of others.²⁴ Besides, children should have 25
something to do, and the rattle of Archytas, which people
give to their children in order to amuse them and prevent
them from breaking anything in the house, was a capital
invention, for a young thing cannot be quiet. The rattle
is a toy suited to the infant mind, and education is a 30
rattle or toy for children of a larger growth. We conclude
then that they should be taught music in such a
way as to become not only critics but performers.

The question what is or is not suitable for different
ages may be easily answered; nor is there any difficulty
in meeting the objection of those who say that the study
of music is vulgar.²⁵ We reply (1) in the first place, that 35
they who are to be judges must also be performers, and
that they should begin to practise early, although when
they are older they may be spared the execution; they

²³ 1339^a 33—^b10.²⁴ Cp. 1339^a 42.²⁵ Cp. 1339^b 8, 1341^b 14.

must have learned to appreciate what is good and to delight in it, thanks to the knowledge which they acquired in their youth. As to (2) the vulgarizing effect which music is supposed to exercise, this is a question which we shall have no difficulty in determining, when we have considered to what extent freemen who are being trained to political virtue should pursue the art, what melodies and what rhythms they should be allowed to use, and what instruments should be employed in teaching them to play; for even the instrument makes a difference. The answer to the objection turns upon these distinctions; for it is quite possible that certain methods of teaching and learning music do really have a degrading effect. It is evident then that the learning of music ought not to impede the business of riper years, or to degrade the body or render it unfit for civil or military training, whether for bodily exercises at the time or for later studies.

- 10 The right measure will be attained if students of music stop short of the arts which are practised in professional contests, and do not seek to acquire those fantastic marvels of execution which are now the fashion in such contests, and from these have passed into education. Let the young practise even such music as we have prescribed, only until they are able to feel delight in noble melodies and rhythms, and not merely in that common part of music in which every slave or child and even some animals find pleasure.

From these principles we may also infer what instruments should be used. The flute, or any other instrument which requires great skill, as for example the harp, ought not to be admitted into education, but only such as will make intelligent students of music or of the other parts of education. Besides, the flute is not an instrument

which is expressive of moral character; it is too exciting. The proper time for using it is when the performance aims not at instruction, but at the relief of the passions.²⁶ And there is a further objection; the impediment which the flute presents to the use of the voice detracts from its educational value. The ancients therefore were right 25 in forbidding the flute to youths and freemen, although they had once allowed it. For when their wealth gave them a greater inclination to leisure, and they had loftier notions of excellence, being also elated with their success, both before and after the Persian War, with more zeal 30 than discernment they pursued every kind of knowledge, and so they introduced the flute into education. At Lacedaemon there was a choragus who led the chorus with a flute, and at Athens the instrument became so popular that most freemen could play upon it. The popularity is shown by the tablet which Thrasippus dedicated when he furnished the chorus to Ecphantides. 35 Later experience enabled men to judge what was or was not really conducive to virtue, and they rejected both the flute and several other old-fashioned instruments, such as the Lydian harp, the many-stringed lyre, the 'hepta- 40 gon', 'triangle', 'sambuca', and the like—which are intended only to give pleasure to the hearer, and require 1341^b extraordinary skill of hand.²⁷ There is a meaning also in the myth of the ancients, which tells how Athene invented the flute and then threw it away. It was not a bad idea of theirs, that the Goddess disliked the instrument 5 because it made the face ugly; but with still more reason may we say that she rejected it because the acquirement of flute-playing contributes nothing to the mind, since to Athene we ascribe both knowledge and art.

Thus then we reject the professional instruments and

²⁶ Cp. 1341^b 38.

²⁷ Cp. Plato, *Rep.* iii. 399 c, d.

also the professional mode of education in music (and
 10 by professional we mean that which is adopted in con-
 tests), for in this the performer practises the art, not for
 the sake of his own improvement, but in order to give
 pleasure, and that of a vulgar sort, to his hearers. For
 this reason the execution of such music is not the part
 of a freeman but of a paid performer, and the result is
 15 that the performers are vulgarized, for the end at which
 they aim is bad.²⁸ The vulgarity of the spectator tends
 to lower the character of the music and therefore of the
 performers; they look to him—he makes them what they
 are, and fashions even their bodies by the movements
 which he expects them to exhibit.

7 We have also to consider rhythms and modes, and
 20 their use in education. Shall we use them all or make a
 distinction? and shall the same distinction be made for
 those who practise music with a view to education, or
 shall it be some other? Now we see that music is pro-
 duced by melody and rhythm, and we ought to know
 25 what influence these have respectively on education, and
 whether we should prefer excellence in melody or ex-
 cellence in rhythm. But as the subject has been very well
 treated by many musicians of the present day, and also
 by philosophers²⁹ who have had considerable experience
 30 of musical education, to these we would refer the more
 exact student of the subject; we shall only speak of it
 now after the manner of the legislator, stating the gen-
 eral principles.

We accept the division of melodies proposed by cer-
 tain philosophers into ethical melodies, melodies of ac-
 tion, and passionate or inspiring melodies, each having,
 as they say, a mode corresponding to it. But we main-

²⁸ Cp. Plato, *Laws*, iii. 700.

²⁹ Cp. *Rep.* iii. 398 D sqq.

tain further that music should be studied, not for the sake 35
of one, but of many benefits, that is to say, with a view
to (1) education, (2) purgation (the word 'purgation'
we use at present without explanation, but when here-
after we speak of poetry,⁸⁰ we will treat the subject with
more precision); music may also serve (3) for intellec-
tual enjoyment, for relaxation and for recreation after 40
exertion. It is clear, therefore, that all the modes must 1342^a
be employed by us, but not all of them in the same man-
ner. In education the most ethical modes are to be pre-
ferred, but in listening to the performances of others we
may admit the modes of action and passion also. For 5
feelings such as pity and fear, or, again, enthusiasm,
exist very strongly in some souls, and have more or less
influence over all. Some persons fall into a religious
frenzy, whom we see as a result of the sacred melodies—
when they have used the melodies that excite the soul to 10
mystic frenzy—restored as though they had found heal-
ing and purgation. Those who are influenced by pity or
fear, and every emotional nature, must have a like ex-
perience, and others in so far as each is susceptible to 15
such emotions, and all are in a manner purged and their
souls lightened and delighted. The purgative melodies
likewise give an innocent pleasure to mankind. Such are
the modes and the melodies in which those who perform
music at the theatre should be invited to compete. But
since the spectators are of two kinds—the one free and
educated, and the other a vulgar crowd composed of
mechanics, labourers, and the like—there ought to be 20
contests and exhibitions instituted for the relaxation of
the second class also. And the music will correspond to
their minds; for as their minds are perverted from the

⁸⁰ Cp. *Poet.* 1449^b 27, though the promise is really unfulfilled. The reference is probably to a lost part of the *Poetics*.

natural state, so there are perverted modes and highly strung and unnaturally coloured melodies. A man receives pleasure from what is natural to him, and therefore professional musicians may be allowed to practise this lower sort of music before an audience of a lower type. But, for the purposes of education, as I have already said,³¹ those modes and melodies should be employed which are ethical, such as the Dorian, as we said before;³² though we may include any others which are approved by philosophers who have had a musical education. The Socrates of the *Republic*³³ is wrong in retaining only the Phrygian mode along with the Dorian, and the more so because he rejects the flute; for the Phrygian is to the modes what the flute is to musical instruments—both of them are exciting and emotional. Poetry proves this, for Bacchic frenzy and all similar emotions are most suitably expressed by the flute, and are better set to the Phrygian than to any other mode. The dithyramb, for example, is acknowledged to be Phrygian, a fact of which the connoisseurs of music offer many proofs, saying, among other things, that Philoxenus, having attempted to compose his *Mysians* as a dithyramb in the Dorian mode, found it impossible, and fell back by the very nature of things into the more appropriate Phrygian. All men agree that the Dorian music is the gravest and manliest. And whereas we say that the extremes should be avoided and the mean followed, and whereas the Dorian is a mean between the other modes,³⁴ it is evident that our youth should be taught the Dorian music.

Two principles have to be kept in view, what is possible, what is becoming: at these every man ought to

³¹ 1342^a 2.

³³ Plato, *Rep.* iii. 399 A.

³² 1340^b 3 sq.

³⁴ Cp. 1340^a 42.

aim. But even these are relative to age; the old, who 20
have lost their powers, cannot very well sing the high-
strung modes, and nature herself seems to suggest that
their songs should be of the more relaxed kind. Where-
fore the musicians likewise blame Socrates,³⁵ and with
justice, for rejecting the relaxed modes in education un- 25
der the idea that they are intoxicating, not in the ordi-
nary sense of intoxication (for wine rather tends to ex-
cite men), but because they have no strength in them.
And so, with a view also to the time of life when men
begin to grow old, they ought to practise the gentler
modes and melodies as well as the others, and, further,
any mode, such as the Lydian above all others appears
to be, which is suited to children of tender age, and pos- 30
sesses the elements both of order and of education. Thus
it is clear that education should be based upon three
principles—the mean, the possible, the becoming, these
three.

³⁵ *Rep.* iii. 398 E sqq.

**PRESIDENT'S SECRETARIAT
LIBRARY.**

Acen. No.....204.....

1. Books may be retained for a period not exceeding fifteen days.